

GNE.3230R1C39

PATENT

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant	:	Eaton, et al.
Appl. No.	:	10/063,557
Filed	:	May 2, 2002
For	:	SECRETED AND TRANSMEMBRANE POLYPEPTIDES AND NUCLEIC ACIDS ENCODING THE SAME
Examiner	:	David J. Blanchard
Group Art Unit	:	1642

DECLARATION OF J. CHRISTOPHER GRIMALDI UNDER 37 CFR §1.132

Commissioner for Patents  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Dear Sir:

I, J. Christopher Grimaldi, declare and state as follows:

1. I am a Senior Research Associate in the Molecular Biology Department of Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco, CA 94080.
2. My scientific Curriculum Vitae, including my list of publications, is attached to and forms part of this Declaration (Exhibit A).
3. I joined Genentech in January of 1999. From 1999 to 2003, I directed the Cloning Laboratory in the Molecular Biology Department. During this time I directed or performed numerous molecular biology techniques including semi-quantitative Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR) analyses. I am currently involved, among other projects, in the isolation of genes coding for membrane associated proteins which can be used as targets for antibody therapeutics against cancer. In connection with the above-identified patent application, I personally performed or directed the semi-quantitative PCR gene expression analyses in the assay entitled "Tumor Versus Normal Differential Tissue Expression Distribution," which is described in EXAMPLE 18 in the specification. These studies were used to identify differences in gene expression between tumor tissue and their normal counterparts.
4. EXAMPLE 18 reports the results of the PCR analyses conducted as part of the investigating of several newly discovered DNA sequences. This process included developing

Appl. No. : 10/063,557  
Filed : May 2, 2002

primers and analyzing expression of the DNA sequences of interest in normal and tumor tissues. The analyses were designed to determine whether a difference exists between gene expression in normal tissues as compared to tumor in the same tissue type.

5. The DNA libraries used in the gene expression studies were made from pooled samples of normal and of tumor tissues. Data from pooled samples is more likely to be accurate than data obtained from a sample from a single individual. That is, the detection of variations in gene expression is likely to represent a more generally relevant condition when pooled samples from normal tissues are compared with pooled samples from tumors in the same tissue type.

6. In differential gene expression studies, one looks for genes whose expression levels differ significantly under different conditions, for example, in normal versus diseased tissue. Thus, I conducted a semi-quantitative analysis of the expression of the DNA sequences of interest in normal versus tumor tissues. Expression levels were graded according to a scale of +, -, and +/- to indicate the amount of the specific signal detected. Using the widely accepted technique of PCR, it was determined whether the polynucleotides tested were more highly expressed, less expressed, or whether expression remained the same in tumor tissue as compared to its normal counterpart. Because this technique relies on the visual detection of ethidium bromide staining of PCR products on agarose gels, it is reasonable to assume that any detectable differences seen between two samples will represent at least a two fold difference in cDNA.

7. The results of the gene expression studies indicate that the genes of interest can be used to differentiate tumor from normal. The precise levels of gene expression are irrelevant; what matters is that there is a relative difference in expression between normal tissue and tumor tissue. The precise type of tumor is also irrelevant; again, the assay was designed to indicate whether a difference exists between normal tissue and tumor tissue of the same type. If a difference is detected, this indicates that the gene and its corresponding polypeptide and antibodies against the polypeptide are useful for diagnostic purposes, to screen samples to differentiate between normal and tumor. Additional studies can then be conducted if further information is desired.

8. I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information or belief are believed to be true, and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

By: \_\_\_\_\_

J. Christopher Grimaldi

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

8/10/2004

## **J. Christopher Grimaldi**

1434-36<sup>th</sup> Ave.  
San Francisco, CA 94122  
(415) 681-1639 (Home)

### **EDUCATION**

University of California, Berkeley  
Bachelor of Arts in Molecular Biology, 1984

### **EMPLOYMENT EXPERIENCE**

#### **SRA**

Genentech Inc., South San Francisco; 1/99 to present

Previously, was responsible to direct and manage the Cloning Lab. Currently focused on isolating cancer specific genes for the Tumor Antigen (TAP), and Secreted Tumor Protein (STOP) projects for the Oncology Department as well as Immunologically relevant genes for the Immunology Department. Directed a lab of 6 scientists focused on a company-wide team effort to identify and isolate secreted proteins for potential therapeutic use (SPDI). For the SPDI project my duties were, among other things, the critically important coordination of the cloning of thousands of putative genes, by developing a smooth process of communication between the Bioinformatics, Cloning, Sequencing, and Legal teams. Collaborated with several groups to discover novel genes through the Curagen project, a unique differential display methodology. Interacted extensively with the Legal team providing essential data needed for filing patents on novel genes discovered through the SPDI, TAP and Curagen projects. My group has developed, implemented and patented high throughput cloning methodologies that have proven to be essential for the isolation of hundreds of novel genes for the SPDI, TAP and Curagen projects as well as dozens of other smaller projects.

#### **Scientist**

DNAX Research Institute, Palo Alto; 9/91 to 1/99

Involved in multiple projects aimed at understanding novel genes discovered through bioinformatics studies and functional assays. Developed and patented a method for the specific depletion of eosinophils in vivo using monoclonal antibodies. Developed and implemented essential technical methodologies and provided strategic direction in the areas of expression, cloning, protein purification, general molecular biology, and monoclonal antibody production. Trained and supervised numerous technical staff.

#### **Facilities Manager**

Corixa, Redwood City; 5/89 - 7/91.

Directed plant-related activities, which included expansion planning, maintenance, safety, purchasing, inventory control, shipping and receiving, and laboratory management. Designed and implemented the safety program. Also served as liaison to regulatory agencies at the local, state and federal level. Was in charge of property leases, leasehold improvements, etc. Negotiated vendor contracts and directed the purchasing department. Trained and supervised personnel to carry out the above-mentioned duties.

SRA                      University of California, San Francisco  
Cancer Research Institute; 2/87-4/89.

Was responsible for numerous cloning projects including: studies of somatic hypermutation, studies of AIDS-associated lymphomas, and cloning of t(5;14), t(11;14), and t(8;14) translocations. Focused on the activation of hemopoietic growth factors involved in the t(5;14) translocation in leukemia patients..

Research  
Technician                      Berlex Biosciences, South San Francisco; 7/85-2/87.

Worked on a subunit porcine vaccine directed against *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae*. Was responsible for generating genomic libraries, screening with degenerate oligonucleotides, and characterizing and expressing clones in *E. coli*. Also constructed a general purpose expression vector for use by other scientific teams.

#### PUBLICATIONS

1. Hilary F. Clark, et al. "The Secreted Protein Discovery Initiative (SPDI), a Large-scale Effort to Identify Novel Human Secreted and Transmembrane Proteins: a bioinformatics assessment." *Genome Res.* Vol 13(10), 2265-2270, 2003
2. Sean H. Adams, Clarissa Chui, Sarah L. Schilbach, Xing Xian Yu, Audrey D. Goddard, J. Christopher Grimaldi, James Lee, Patrick Dowd, David A. Lewin, & Steven Colman "BFTT, a Unique Acyl-CoA Thioesterase Induced in Thermogenic Brown Adipose Tissue: Cloning, organization of the human gene and assessment of a potential link to obesity" *Biochemical Journal*, Vol 360, 135-142, 2001
3. Szeto W, Jiang W, Tice DA, Rubinfeld B, Hollingshead PG, Fong SE, Dugger DL, Pham T, Yansura D, Wong TA, Grimaldi JC, Corpuz RT, Singh JS, Frantz GD, Devaux B, Crowley CW, Schwall RH, Eberhard DA, Rastelli L, Polakis P, and Pennica D. "Overexpression of the Retinoic Acid-Responsive Gene *Stra6* in Human Cancers and its Synergistic Activation by Wnt-1 and Retinoic Acid." *Cancer Research* Vol. 61(10), 4197-4205, 2001
4. Jeanne Kahn, Fuad Mehraban, Gladdys Ingle, Xiaohua Xin, Juliet E. Bryant, Gordon Vehar, Jill Schoenfeld, J. Christopher Grimaldi (incorrectly named as "Grimaldi, CJ"), Franklin Peale, Aparna Draksharapu, David A. Lewin, and Mary E. Gerritsen. "Gene Expression Profiling in an in Vitro Model of Angiogenesis." *American Journal of Pathology* Vol 156(6), 1887-1900, 2000.
5. Grimaldi JC, Yu NX, Grunig G, Seymour BW, Cottrez F, Robinson DS, Hosken N, Ferlin WG, Wu X, Soto H, O'Garra A, Howard MC, Coffman RL. "Depletion of eosinophils in mice through the use of antibodies specific for C-C chemokine receptor 3 (CCR3). *Journal of Leukocyte Biology*; Vol. 65(6), 846-53, 1999
6. Oliver AM, Grimaldi JC, Howard MC, Kearney JF. "Independently ligating CD38 and Fc gammaRIIB relays a dominant negative signal to B cells." *Hybridoma* Vol. 18(2), 113-9, 1999

7. Cockayne DA, Muchamuel T, Grimaldi JC, Muller-Steffner H, Randall TD, Lund FE, Murray R, Schuber F, Howard MC. "Mice deficient for the ecto-nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide glycohydrolase CD38 exhibit altered humoral immune responses." *Blood* Vol. 92(4), 1324-33, 1998
8. Frances E. Lund, Nanette W. Solvason, Michael P. Cooke, Andrew W. Heath, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Troy D. Randall, R. M. E. Parkhouse, Christopher C Goodnow and Maureen C. Howard. "Signaling through murine CD38 is impaired in antigen receptor unresponsive B cells." *European Journal of Immunology*, Vol. 25(5), 1338-1345, 1995
9. M. J. Guimaraes, J. F. Bazan, A. Zolotnik, M. V. Wiles, J. C. Grimaldi, F. Lee, T. McClanahan. "A new approach to the study of haematopoietic development in the yolk sac and embryoid body." *Development*, Vol. 121(10), 3335-3346, 1995
10. J. Christopher Grimaldi, Sriram Balasubramanian, J. Fernando Bazan, Armen Shanafelt, Gerard Zurawski and Maureen Howard. "CD38-mediated protein ribosylation." *Journal of Immunology*, Vol. 155(2), 811-817, 1995
11. Leopoldo Santos-Argumedo, Frances F. Lund, Andrew W. Heath, Nanette Solvason, Wei Wei Wu, J. Christopher Grimaldi, R. M. E. Parkhouse and Maureen Howard. "CD38 unresponsiveness of xid B cells implicates Bruton's tyrosine kinase (btk) as a regulator of CD38 induced signal transduction." *International Immunology*, Vol 7(2), 163-170, 1995
12. Frances Lund, Nanette Solvason, J. Christopher Grimaldi, R. M. E. Parkhouse and Maureen Howard. "Murine CD38: An immunoregulatory ectoenzyme." *Immunology Today*, Vol. 16(10), 469-473, 1995
13. Maureen Howard, J. Christopher Grimaldi, J. Fernando Bazan, Frances E. Lund, Leopoldo Santos-Argumedo, R. M. E. Parkhouse, Timothy F. Walseth, and Hon Cheung Lee. "Formation and Hydrolysis of Cyclic ADP-Ribose Catalyzed by Lymphocyte Antigen CD38." *Science*, Vol. 262, 1056-1059, 1993
14. Nobuyuki Harada, Leopoldo Santos-Argumedo, Ray Chang, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Frances Lund, Camilynn I. Brannan, Neal G. Copeland, Nancy A. Jenkins, Andrew Heath, R. M. E. Parkhouse and Maureen Howard. "Expression Cloning of a cDNA Encoding a Novel Murine B Cell Activation Marker: Homology to Human CD38." *The Journal of Immunology*, Vol. 151, 3111-3118, 1993
15. David J. Rawlings, Douglas C. Saffran, Satoshi Tsukada, David A. Largaespada, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Lucie Cohen Randolph N. Mohr, J. Fernando Bazan, Maureen Howard, Neal G. Copeland, Nancy A. Jenkins, Owen Witte. "Mutation of Unique Region of Bruton's Tyrosine Kinase in Immunodeficient XID Mice." *Science*, Vol. 261, 358-360, 1993
16. J. Christopher Grimaldi, Raul Torres, Christine A. Kozak, Ray Chang, Edward Clark, Maureen Howard, and Debra A. Cockayne. "Genomic Structure and Chromosomal Mapping of the Murine CD40 Gene." *The Journal of Immunology*, Vol 149, 3921-3926, 1992
17. Timothy C. Meeker, Bruce Shiramizu, Lawrence Kaplan, Brian Herndier, Henry Sanchez, J. Christopher Grimaldi, James Baumgartner, Jacob Rachlin, Ellen Feigal, Mark Rosenblum and Michael S. McGrath. "Evidence for Molecular Subtypes of HIV-Associated Lymphoma:

Division into Peripheral Monoclonal, Polyclonal and Central Nervous System Lymphoma." AIDS, Vol. 5, 669-674, 1991

18. Ann Grimaldi and Chris Grimaldi. "Small-Scale Lambda DNA Prep." Contribution to Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, Supplement 5, Winter 1989
19. J. Christopher Grimaldi, Timothy C. Meeker. "The t(5;14) Chromosomal Translocation in a Case of Acute Lymphocytic Leukemia Joins the Interleukin-3 Gene to the Immunoglobulin Heavy Chain Gene." Blood, Vol. 73, 2081-2085, 1989
20. Timothy C. Meeker, J. Christopher Grimaldi, et al. "An Additional Breakpoint Region in the BCL-1 Locus Associated with the t(11;14) (q13;q32) Translocation of B-Lymphocytic Malignancy." Blood, Vol. 74, 1801-1806, 1989
- 21 Timothy C. Meeker, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Robert O'Rourke, et al. "Lack of Detectable Somatic Hypermutation in the V Region of the Ig H Chain Gene of a Human Chronic B Lymphocytic Leukemia." The Journal of Immunology, Vol. 141, 3994-3998, 1988

#### MANUSCRIPTS IN PREPARATION

1. Sriram Balasubramanian, J. Christopher Grimaldi, J. Fernando Bazan, Gerard Zurawski and Maureen Howard. "Structural and functional characterization of CD38: Identification of active site residues"

#### PATENTS

1. "Methods for Eosinophil Depletion with Antibody to CCR3 Receptor" (US 6,207,155 B1).
2. "Amplification Based Cloning Method." (US 6,607,899)
3. Ashkenazi et al., "Secreted and Transmembrane Polypeptides and Nucleic Acids Encoding the Same." (this patent covers several hundred genes)
4. "IL-17 Homologous Polypeptides and Therapeutic Uses Thereof"
5. "Method of Diagnosing and Treating Cartilaginous Disorders."

#### MEMBERSHIPS AND ACTIVITIES

Editor           Frontiers in Bioscience

Member         DNAX Safety Committee 1991-1999  
                  Biological Safety Affairs Forum (BSAF) 1990-1991  
                  Environmental Law Foundation (ELF) 1990-1991

## IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant	:	Eaton, et al.
Appl. No.	:	10/063,557
Filed	:	May 2, 2002
For	:	SECRETED AND TRANSMEMBRANE POLYPEPTIDES AND NUCLEIC ACIDS ENCODING THE SAME
Examiner	:	David J. Blanchard
Group Art Unit	:	1642

**DECLARATION OF J. CHRISTOPHER GRIMALDI, UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.132**

Commissioner for Patents  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Dear Sir:

I, J. Christopher Grimaldi, declare and say as follows:

1. I am a Senior Research Associate in the Molecular Biology Department of Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco, CA 94080.

2. I joined Genentech in January of 1999. From 1999 to 2003, I directed the Cloning Laboratory in the Molecular Biology Department. During this time I directed or performed numerous molecular biology techniques including qualitative Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR) analyses. I am currently involved in, among other projects, the isolation of genes coding for membrane associated proteins which can be used as targets for antibody therapeutics against cancer. In connection with the above-identified patent application, I personally performed or directed the semi-quantitative PCR analyses in the assay entitled "Tumor Versus Normal Differential Tissue Expression Distribution" which is described in EXAMPLE 18 in the specification that were used to identify differences in gene expression between tumor tissue and their normal counterparts.

3. My scientific Curriculum Vitae, including my list of publications, is attached to and forms part of this Declaration (Exhibit A).

4. In differential gene expression studies, one looks for genes whose expression levels differ significantly under different conditions, for example, in normal versus diseased tissue.

Appl. No. : 10/063,557  
Filed : May 2, 2002

Chromosomal aberrations, such as gene amplification, and chromosomal translocations are important markers of specific types of cancer and lead to the aberrant expression of specific genes and their encoded polypeptides, including over-expression and under-expression. For example, gene amplification is a process in which specific regions of a chromosome are duplicated, thus creating multiple copies of certain genes that normally exist as a single copy. Gene under-expression can occur when a gene is not transcribed into mRNA. In addition, chromosomal translocations occur when two different chromosomes break and are rejoined to each other chromosome resulting in a chimeric chromosome which displays a different expression pattern relative to the parent chromosomes. Amplification of certain genes such as Her2/Neu [Singleton *et al.*, Pathol. Annu., 27Pt1:165-190], or chromosomal translocations such as t(5;14), [Grimaldi *et al.*, Blood, 73(8):2081-2085(1989); Meeker *et al.*, Blood, 76(2):285-289(1990)] give cancer cells a growth or survival advantage relative to normal cells, and might also provide a mechanism of tumor cell resistance to chemotherapy or radiotherapy. When the chromosomal aberration results in the aberrant expression of a mRNA and the corresponding gene product (the polypeptide), as it does in the aforementioned cases, the gene product is a promising target for cancer therapy, for example, by the therapeutic antibody approach.

5. Comparison of gene expression levels in normal versus diseased tissue has important implications both diagnostically and therapeutically. For example, those who work in this field are well aware that in the vast majority of cases, when a gene is over-expressed, as evidenced by an increased production of mRNA, the gene product or polypeptide will also be over-expressed. It is unlikely that one identifies increased mRNA expression without associated increased protein expression. This same principle applies to gene under-expression. When a gene is under-expressed, the gene product is also likely to be under-expressed. Stated in another way, two cell samples which have differing mRNA concentrations for a specific gene are expected to have correspondingly different concentration of protein for that gene. Techniques used to detect mRNA, such as Northern Blotting, Differential Display, *in situ* hybridization, quantitative PCR, Taqman, and more recently Microarray technology all rely on the dogma that a change in mRNA will represent a similar change in protein. If this dogma did not hold true then these techniques would have little value and not be so widely used. The use of mRNA quantitation techniques have identified a seemingly endless number of genes which are differentially expressed in various tissues and these genes have subsequently been shown to have correspondingly similar changes in their protein levels. Thus, the detection of increased mRNA expression is expected to result in increased polypeptide expression, and the detection of decreased mRNA expression is expected to result in decreased polypeptide expression. The detection of increased or decreased polypeptide expression can be used for cancer diagnosis and treatment.

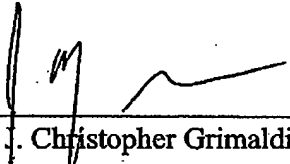
6. However, even in the rare case where the protein expression does not correlate with the mRNA expression, this still provides significant information useful for cancer diagnosis and treatment. For example, if over- or under-expression of a gene product does not correlate with over- or under-expression of mRNA in certain tumor types but does so in others, then identification of both gene expression and protein expression enables more accurate tumor classification and hence better determination of suitable therapy. In addition, absence of over- or



Appl. No. : 10/063,557  
Filed : May 2, 2002

under-expression of the gene product in the presence of a particular over- or under-expression of mRNA is crucial information for the practicing clinician. For example, if a gene is over-expressed but the corresponding gene product is not significantly over-expressed, the clinician accordingly will decide not to treat a patient with agents that target that gene product.

7. I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information or belief are believed to be true, and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

By:   
J. Christopher Grimaldi

Date: 8/10/2002

S:\DOCS\VAOK\ADK-5479.DOC  
071904

## **J. Christopher Grimaldi**

1434-36<sup>th</sup> Ave.  
San Francisco, CA 94122  
(415) 681-1639 (Home)

### **EDUCATION**

University of California, Berkeley  
Bachelor of Arts in Molecular Biology, 1984

### **EMPLOYMENT EXPERIENCE**

#### **SRA**

Genentech Inc., South San Francisco; 1/99 to present

Previously, was responsible to direct and manage the Cloning Lab. Currently focused on isolating cancer specific genes for the Tumor Antigen (TAP), and Secreted Tumor Protein (STOP) projects for the Oncology Department as well as Immunologically relevant genes for the Immunology Department. Directed a lab of 6 scientists focused on a company-wide team effort to identify and isolate secreted proteins for potential therapeutic use (SPDI). For the SPDI project my duties were, among other things, the critically important coordination of the cloning of thousands of putative genes, by developing a smooth process of communication between the Bioinformatics, Cloning, Sequencing, and Legal teams. Collaborated with several groups to discover novel genes through the Curagen project, a unique differential display methodology. Interacted extensively with the Legal team providing essential data needed for filing patents on novel genes discovered through the SPDI, TAP and Curagen projects. My group has developed, implemented and patented high throughput cloning methodologies that have proven to be essential for the isolation of hundreds of novel genes for the SPDI, TAP and Curagen projects as well as dozens of other smaller projects.

#### **Scientist**

DNAX Research Institute, Palo Alto; 9/91 to 1/99

Involved in multiple projects aimed at understanding novel genes discovered through bioinformatics studies and functional assays. Developed and patented a method for the specific depletion of eosinophils in vivo using monoclonal antibodies. Developed and implemented essential technical methodologies and provided strategic direction in the areas of expression, cloning, protein purification, general molecular biology, and monoclonal antibody production. Trained and supervised numerous technical staff.

#### **Facilities**

##### **Manager**

Corixa, Redwood City; 5/89 - 7/91.

Directed plant-related activities, which included expansion planning, maintenance, safety, purchasing, inventory control, shipping and receiving, and laboratory management. Designed and implemented the safety program. Also served as liaison to regulatory agencies at the local, state and federal level. Was in charge of property leases, leasehold improvements, etc. Negotiated vendor contracts and directed the purchasing department. Trained and supervised personnel to carry out the above-mentioned duties.

SRA                      University of California, San Francisco  
Cancer Research Institute; 2/87-4/89.

Was responsible for numerous cloning projects including: studies of somatic hypermutation, studies of AIDS-associated lymphomas, and cloning of t(5;14), t(11;14), and t(8;14) translocations. Focused on the activation of hemopoietic growth factors involved in the t(5;14) translocation in leukemia patients..

Research  
Technician                      Berlex Biosciences, South San Francisco; 7/85-2/87.

Worked on a subunit porcine vaccine directed against *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae*. Was responsible for generating genomic libraries, screening with degenerate oligonucleotides, and characterizing and expressing clones in *E. coli*. Also constructed a general purpose expression vector for use by other scientific teams.

#### PUBLICATIONS

1. Hilary F. Clark, et al. "The Secreted Protein Discovery Initiative (SPDI), a Large-scale Effort to Identify Novel Human Secreted and Transmembrane Proteins: a bioinformatics assessment." *Genome Res.* Vol 13(10), 2265-2270, 2003
2. Sean H. Adams, Clarissa Chui, Sarah L. Schilbach, Xing Xian Yu, Audrey D. Goddard, J. Christopher Grimaldi, James Lee, Patrick Dowd, David A. Lewin, & Steven Colman. "BFTT, a Unique Acyl-CoA Thioesterase Induced in Thermogenic Brown Adipose Tissue: Cloning, organization of the human gene and assessment of a potential link to obesity" *Biochemical Journal*, Vol 360, 135-142, 2001
3. Szeto W, Jiang W, Tice DA, Rubinfeld B, Hollingshead PG, Fong SE, Dugger DL, Pham T, Yansura D, Wong TA, Grimaldi JC, Corpuz RT, Singh JS, Frantz GD, Devaux B, Crowley CW, Schwall RH, Eberhard DA, Rastelli L, Polakis P, and Pennica D. "Overexpression of the Retenoic Acid-Responsive Gene *Stra6* in Human Cancers and its Synergistic Activation by Wnt-1 and Retinoic Acid." *Cancer Research* Vol. 61(10), 4197-4205, 2001
4. Jeanne Kahn, Fuad Mehraban, Gladdys Ingle, Xiaohua Xin, Juliet E. Bryant, Gordon Vehar, Jill Schoenfeld, J. Christopher Grimaldi (incorrectly named as "Grimaldi, CJ"), Franklin Peale, Aparna Draksharapu, David A. Lewin, and Mary E. Gerritsen. "Gene Expression Profiling in an in Vitro Model of Angiogenesis." *American Journal of Pathology* Vol 156(6), 1887-1900, 2000.
5. Grimaldi JC, Yu NX, Grunig G, Seymour BW, Cottrez F, Robinson DS, Hosken N, Ferlin WG, Wu X, Soto H, O'Garra A, Howard MC, Coffman RL. "Depletion of eosinophils in mice through the use of antibodies specific for C-C chemokine receptor 3 (CCR3). *Journal of Leukocyte Biology*; Vol. 65(6), 846-53, 1999
6. Oliver AM, Grimaldi JC, Howard MC, Kearney JF. "Independently ligating CD38 and Fc gammaRIIB relays a dominant negative signal to B cells." *Hybridoma* Vol. 18(2), 113-9, 1999

7. Cockayne DA, Muchamuel T, Grimaldi JC, Muller-Steffner H, Randall TD, Lund FE, Murray R, Schuber F, Howard MC. "Mice deficient for the ecto-nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide glycohydrolase CD38 exhibit altered humoral immune responses." *Blood* Vol. 92(4), 1324-33, 1998
8. Frances E. Lund, Nanette W. Solvason, Michael P. Cooke, Andrew W. Heath, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Troy D. Randall, R. M. E. Parkhouse, Christopher C Goodnow and Maureen C. Howard. "Signaling through murine CD38 is impaired in antigen receptor unresponsive B cells." *European Journal of Immunology*, Vol. 25(5), 1338-1345, 1995
9. M. J. Guimaraes, J. F. Bazan, A. Zolotnik, M. V. Wiles, J. C. Grimaldi, F. Lee, T. McClanahan. "A new approach to the study of haematopoietic development in the yolk sac and embryoid body." *Development*, Vol. 121(10), 3335-3346, 1995
10. J. Christopher Grimaldi, Sriram Balasubramanian, J. Fernando Bazan, Armen Shanafelt, Gerard Zurawski and Maureen Howard. "CD38-mediated protein ribosylation." *Journal of Immunology*, Vol. 155(2), 811-817, 1995
11. Leopoldo Santos-Argumedo, Frances F. Lund, Andrew W. Heath, Nanette Solvason, Wei Wei Wu, J. Christopher Grimaldi, R. M. E. Parkhouse and Maureen Howard. "CD38 unresponsiveness of xid B cells implicates Bruton's tyrosine kinase (btk) as a regulator of CD38 induced signal transduction." *International Immunology*, Vol 7(2), 163-170, 1995
12. Frances Lund, Nanette Solvason, J. Christopher Grimaldi, R. M. E. Parkhouse and Maureen Howard. "Murine CD38: An immunoregulatory ectoenzyme." *Immunology Today*, Vol. 16(10), 469-473, 1995
13. Maureen Howard, J. Christopher Grimaldi, J. Fernando Bazan, Frances E. Lund, Leopoldo Santos-Argumedo, R. M. E. Parkhouse, Timothy F. Walseth, and Hon Cheung Lee. "Formation and Hydrolysis of Cyclic ADP-Ribose Catalyzed by Lymphocyte Antigen CD38." *Science*, Vol. 262, 1056-1059, 1993
14. Nobuyuki Harada, Leopoldo Santos-Argumedo, Ray Chang, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Frances Lund, Camilynn I. Brannan, Neal G. Copeland, Nancy A. Jenkins, Andrew Heath, R. M. E. Parkhouse and Maureen Howard. "Expression Cloning of a cDNA Encoding a Novel Murine B Cell Activation Marker: Homology to Human CD38." *The Journal of Immunology*, Vol. 151, 3111-3118, 1993
15. David J. Rawlings, Douglas C. Saffran, Satoshi Tsukada, David A. Largaespada, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Lucie Cohen Randolph N. Mohr, J. Fernando Bazan, Maureen Howard, Neal G. Copeland, Nancy A. Jenkins, Owen Witte. "Mutation of Unique Region of Bruton's Tyrosine Kinase in Immunodeficient XID Mice." *Science*, Vol. 261, 358-360, 1993
16. J. Christopher Grimaldi, Raul Torres, Christine A. Kozak, Ray Chang, Edward Clark, Maureen Howard, and Debra A. Cockayne. "Genomic Structure and Chromosomal Mapping of the Murine CD40 Gene." *The Journal of Immunology*, Vol 149, 3921-3926, 1992
17. Timothy C. Meeker, Bruce Shiramizu, Lawrence Kaplan, Brian Herndier, Henry Sanchez, J. Christopher Grimaldi, James Baumgartner, Jacob Rachlin, Ellen Feigal, Mark Rosenblum and Michael S. McGrath. "Evidence for Molecular Subtypes of HIV-Associated Lymphoma:

Division into Peripheral Monoclonal, Polyclonal and Central Nervous System Lymphoma." AIDS, Vol. 5, 669-674, 1991

18. Ann Grimaldi and Chris Grimaldi. "Small-Scale Lambda DNA Prep." Contribution to Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, Supplement 5, Winter 1989
19. J. Christopher Grimaldi, Timothy C. Meeker. "The t(5;14) Chromosomal Translocation in a Case of Acute Lymphocytic Leukemia Joins the Interleukin-3 Gene to the Immunoglobulin Heavy Chain Gene." Blood, Vol. 73, 2081-2085, 1989
20. Timothy C. Meeker, J. Christopher Grimaldi, et al. "An Additional Breakpoint Region in the BCL-1 Locus Associated with the t(11;14) (q13;q32) Translocation of B-Lymphocytic Malignancy." Blood, Vol. 74, 1801-1806, 1989
21. Timothy C. Meeker, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Robert O'Rourke, et al. "Lack of Detectable Somatic Hypermutation in the V Region of the Ig.H Chain Gene of a Human Chronic B Lymphocytic Leukemia." The Journal of Immunology, Vol. 141, 3994-3998, 1988

#### MANUSCRIPTS IN PREPARATION

1. Sriram Balasubramanian, J. Christopher Grimaldi, J. Fernando Bazan, Gerard Zurawski and Maureen Howard. "Structural and functional characterization of CD38: Identification of active site residues"

#### PATENTS

1. "Methods for Eosinophil Depletion with Antibody to CCR3 Receptor" (US 6,207,155 B1).
2. "Amplification Based Cloning Method." (US 6,607,899)
3. Ashkenazi et al., "Secreted and Transmembrane Polypeptides and Nucleic Acids Encoding the Same." (this patent covers several hundred genes)
4. "IL-17 Homologous Polypeptides and Therapeutic Uses Thereof"
5. "Method of Diagnosing and Treating Cartilaginous Disorders."

#### MEMBERSHIPS AND ACTIVITIES

Editor                      Frontiers in Bioscience

Member                     DNAX Safety Committee 1991-1999  
                                 Biological Safety Affairs Forum (BSAF) 1990-1991  
                                 Environmental Law Foundation (ELF) 1990-1991

# The t(5;14) Chromosomal Translocation in a Case of Acute Lymphocytic Leukemia Joins the Interleukin-3 Gene to the Immunoglobulin Heavy Chain Gene

By J. Christopher Grimaldi and Timothy C. Meeker

Chromosomal translocations have proven to be important markers of the genetic abnormalities central to the pathogenesis of cancer. By cloning chromosomal breakpoints one can identify activated proto-oncogenes. We have studied a case of B-lineage acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL) that was associated with peripheral blood eosinophilia. The chromosomal translocation t(5;14) (q31;q32) from this sample was cloned and studied at the molecular level. This

translocation joined the immunoglobulin heavy chain joining (Jh) region to the promoter region of the interleukin-3 (IL-3) gene in opposite transcriptional orientations. The data suggest that activation of the IL-3 gene by the enhancer of the immunoglobulin heavy chain gene may play a central role in the pathogenesis of this leukemia and the associated eosinophilia.

© 1989 by Grune & Stratton, Inc.

**K**ARYOTYPIC STUDIES of leukemia and lymphoma have identified frequent nonrandom chromosomal translocations. Some of these translocations juxtapose the immunoglobulin heavy chain (IgH) gene with important

protooncogenes, such as *c-myc* and *bcl-2*.<sup>1,2</sup> In this way, the IgH gene can activate proto-oncogenes, resulting in disordered gene expression and a step in the development of cancer. The investigation of additional nonrandom translocations into the IgH locus allows us to identify new genes promoting the generation of leukemia and lymphoma.

A distinct subtype of acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL) has been characterized by B-lineage phenotype, associated eosinophilia in the peripheral blood, and a t(5;14)(q31;q32) chromosomal translocation.<sup>3,4</sup> This syndrome probably occurs in <1% of all patients with ALL. We hypothesized that the cloning of the translocation characteristic of this leukemia might allow the identification of an important gene on chromosome 5 that plays a role in the evolution of this disease. In this report we demonstrate that the interleukin-3 gene (IL-3) and the IgH gene are joined by this translocation.

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

**Sample and DNA blots.** A bone marrow aspirate from a representative patient with ALL (L1 morphology by French-American-British [FAB] criteria), peripheral eosinophilia (up to 20,000 per microliter with a normal value of <350 per microliter) and a t(5;14)(q31;q32) translocation was studied. Using published methods, genomic DNA was isolated and DNA blots were made.<sup>5</sup> Briefly, 10 µg of high molecular weight (mol wt) DNA were digested using an appropriate restriction enzyme and electrophoresed on a 0.8% agarose gel. The gel was stained with ethidium bromide, photographed, denatured, neutralized, and transferred to Hybond (Amersham, Arlington Heights, IL). After treatment of the filter with ultraviolet light, hybridization was performed. The filter was washed to a final stringency of 0.2% saturated sodium citrate (SSC) and 0.1% sodium lauryl sulfate (SDS) and exposed to film. The human Jh probe has been previously reported.<sup>6</sup>

**Genomic library.** The genomic library was made using pub-

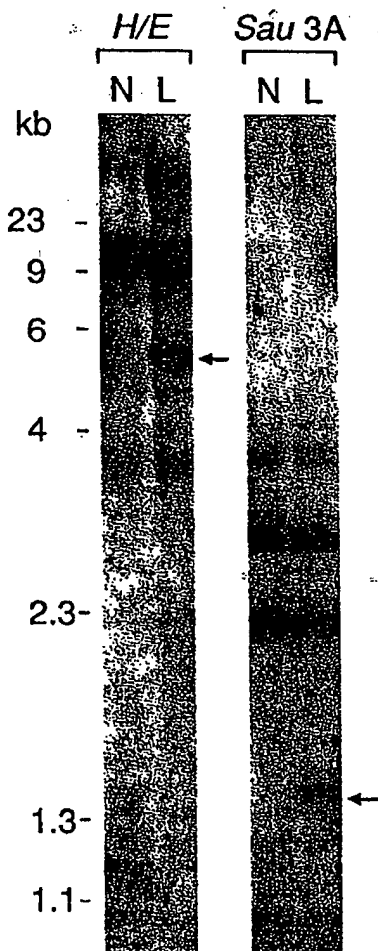


Fig 1. DNA blots of the leukemia sample. The restriction fragment pattern of normal human DNA (N) and the leukemia sample (L) were compared using a human Jh probe. Rearranged bands are indicated by arrows. Sample L exhibits a single rearranged band with both *Hind* III/*Eco*RI and *Sau*3A restriction digests. The rearranged bands are less intense than the other bands because the majority of cells in the sample represent normal bone marrow elements.

From the Division of Hematology/Oncology, Department of Medicine, University of California, San Francisco.

Submitted February 22, 1989; accepted March 8, 1989.

Supported by NIH Grant No. CA01102.

Address reprint requests to Timothy C. Meeker, MD, UCSF/VAMC 111H, 4150 Clement St, San Francisco, CA 94121.

Dr Grimaldi's current address is Biotan Inc, 440 Chesapeake Dr, Seaport Centre, Redwood City, CA 94063.

The publication costs of this article were defrayed in part by page charge payment. This article must therefore be hereby marked "advertisement" in accordance with 18 U.S.C. section 1734 solely to indicate this fact.

© 1989 by Grune & Stratton, Inc.

0006-4971/89/7308-0031\$3.00/0

lished methods.<sup>5</sup> Approximately 100  $\mu$ g of high mol wt genomic DNA were partially digested with the *Sau*3A restriction enzyme. Fragments from 9 to 23 kilobases (kb) in size were isolated on a sucrose gradient and ligated into phage EMBL3A (Stratagene, San Diego). Recombinant phage were packaged, plated, and screened as previously reported.<sup>5</sup>

**DNA sequencing.** Fragments for sequencing were cloned into M13 vectors and sequenced by the chain termination method using Sequenase (United States Biochemical, Cleveland).<sup>7</sup> All sequence data were derived from both strands.

### RESULTS

We studied a bone marrow sample from a patient with ALL and associated peripheral eosinophilia. Karyotypic analysis showed the characteristic t(5;14)(q31;q32) translocation. These features define a distinctive subtype of ALL.<sup>3,4</sup> The leukemic cells were analyzed for cell surface phenotype by immunofluorescence. They were positive for B1 (CD20), B4 (CD19), cALLA (CD10), HLA-DR, and terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (Tdt), but negative for surface immunoglobulin. This phenotypic profile describes an immature cell from the B-lymphocytic lineage.<sup>8</sup>

The leukemia DNA was analyzed by Southern blotting for rearrangements of the IgH gene. Using a human immunoglobulin Jh probe, a single rearranged band was detected by *Eco*RI, *Hind*III, *Sst*I, *Sau*3A, and *Eco*RI plus *Hind*III restriction digests, suggesting rearrangement of one allele (Fig 1). The immunoglobulin Jh region from the other allele was presumably either deleted or in the germline configuration.

We hypothesized that the t(5;14)(q31;q32) juxtaposed a

growth-promoting gene on chromosome 5 with the immunoglobulin Jh region on chromosome 14. Therefore, a genomic library was made from the leukemic sample and screened with a Jh probe. Fifteen distinct positive clones were isolated and screened for the presence of the rearranged *Sau*3A fragment that was detected by DNA blotting. By this analysis, five clones appeared to represent the rearranged allele identified by DNA blots. One of these clones (clone no. 4) was chosen for further study and a detailed restriction map was generated. The *Eco*RI, *Hind*III/*Eco*RI, and *Sst*I fragments from clone no. 4 that hybridized to the human Jh probe were also identical in size to the rearranged fragments from the leukemia sample, confirming that clone no. 4 represented the rearranged leukemic allele.

Phage clone no. 4 contained 3.7 kb of unknown origin joined to the IgH gene in the region of Jh4 (Fig 2). The IgH gene from Jh4 to the C $\mu$  region appeared to be in germline configuration. Previously, the gene encoding hematopoietic growth factor IL-3 had been mapped to chromosome 5q31 so it was suspected that clone no. 4 might contain part of this gene.<sup>9-12</sup> When the restriction map of human IL-3 and clone no. 4 were compared, they were identical for more than 3 kb (Fig 2).

We confirmed the juxtaposition of the IL-3 gene and the IgH gene by nucleic acid sequencing of the subcloned *Bst*EII/*Hpa*I fragment (Fig 2). The sequence of this fragment showed no disruption of the protein coding region or the messenger RNA of the IL-3 gene. The break in the IL-3 gene occurred in the promoter region, 452 base pairs (bp) upstream of the transcriptional start site (position 64, Fig

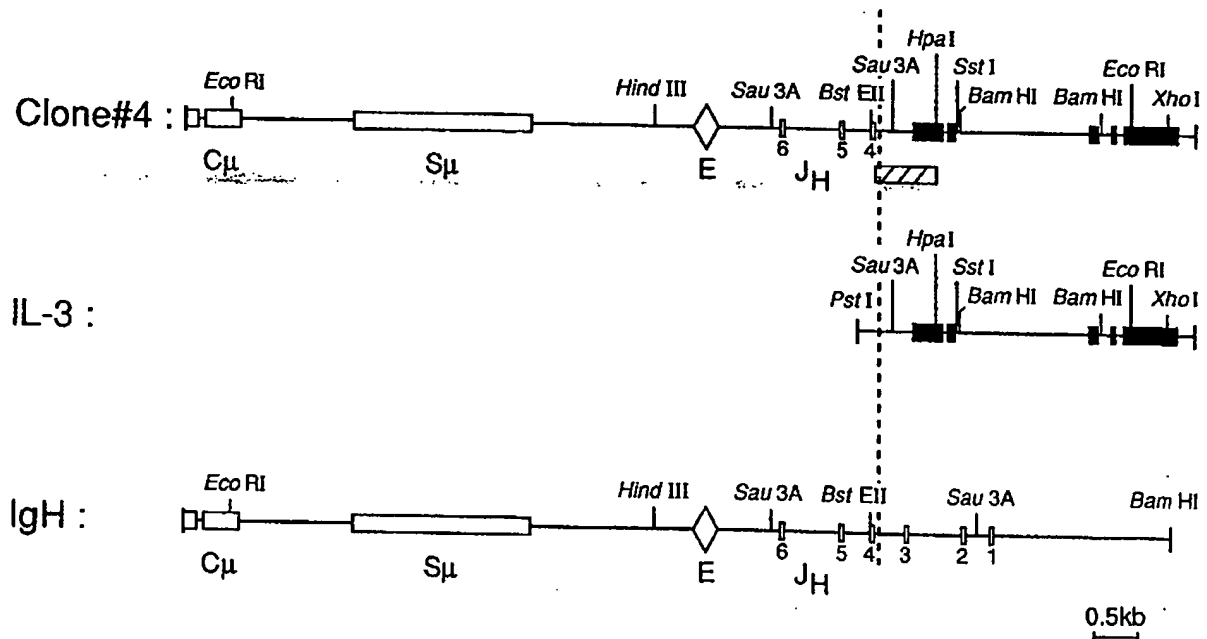


Fig 2. Breakpoint region: t(5;14)(q31;q32). Comparative mapping of phage clone no. 4, the germline IgH region, and the germline IL-3 gene.<sup>23,29</sup> The map of clone no. 4 is identical to that of IgH until it diverges in the region of Jh4 (at the dashed line), after which it is identical to the map of IL-3. The two genes are positioned in a head-to-head orientation. The Ig  $\mu$  chain constant region (C $\mu$ ), switch region (S $\mu$ ), enhancer (E), and Jh segments are indicated (open symbols). The five exons (dark boxes) and four introns of the IL-3 gene are shown. The hatched box indicates the sequenced region.

3A). The break in the IgH gene occurred 2 bp upstream of the Jh4 region. Between the two breaks, 25 bp of uncertain origin (putative N sequence) were inserted.<sup>13,14</sup> No sequences homologous to the immunoglobulin heptamer and nonamer could be identified in the IL-3 sequence (Fig 3B). Therefore, nucleic acid sequencing confirmed the juxtaposition of the IL-3 gene and the IgH gene. The sequence data clearly showed that the genes were positioned in opposite transcriptional orientations (head-to-head).

Available data also allowed us to determine the normal positions of the IL-3 gene and the GM-CSF gene in relation to the centromere of chromosome 5 (Fig 4). The IgH gene is known to be positioned with the variable regions toward the telomere on chromosome 14q.<sup>2,15</sup> It has also been shown that

GM-CSF maps within 9 kb of IL-3 in the same transcriptional orientation.<sup>16</sup> Using this information and assuming a simple translocation event in our sample, we can conclude that the IL-3 gene is normally more centromeric, and the GM-CSF gene more telomeric on chromosome 5q (Fig 4). Furthermore, both are transcribed with their 5' ends toward the centromere.

#### DISCUSSION

In this report we have cloned a unique chromosomal translocation that appears to be a consistent feature of a rare, yet distinct, clinical form of acute leukemia. This translocation joined the promoter of the IL-3 gene to the IgH gene. Except for the altered promoter, the IL-3 gene appeared

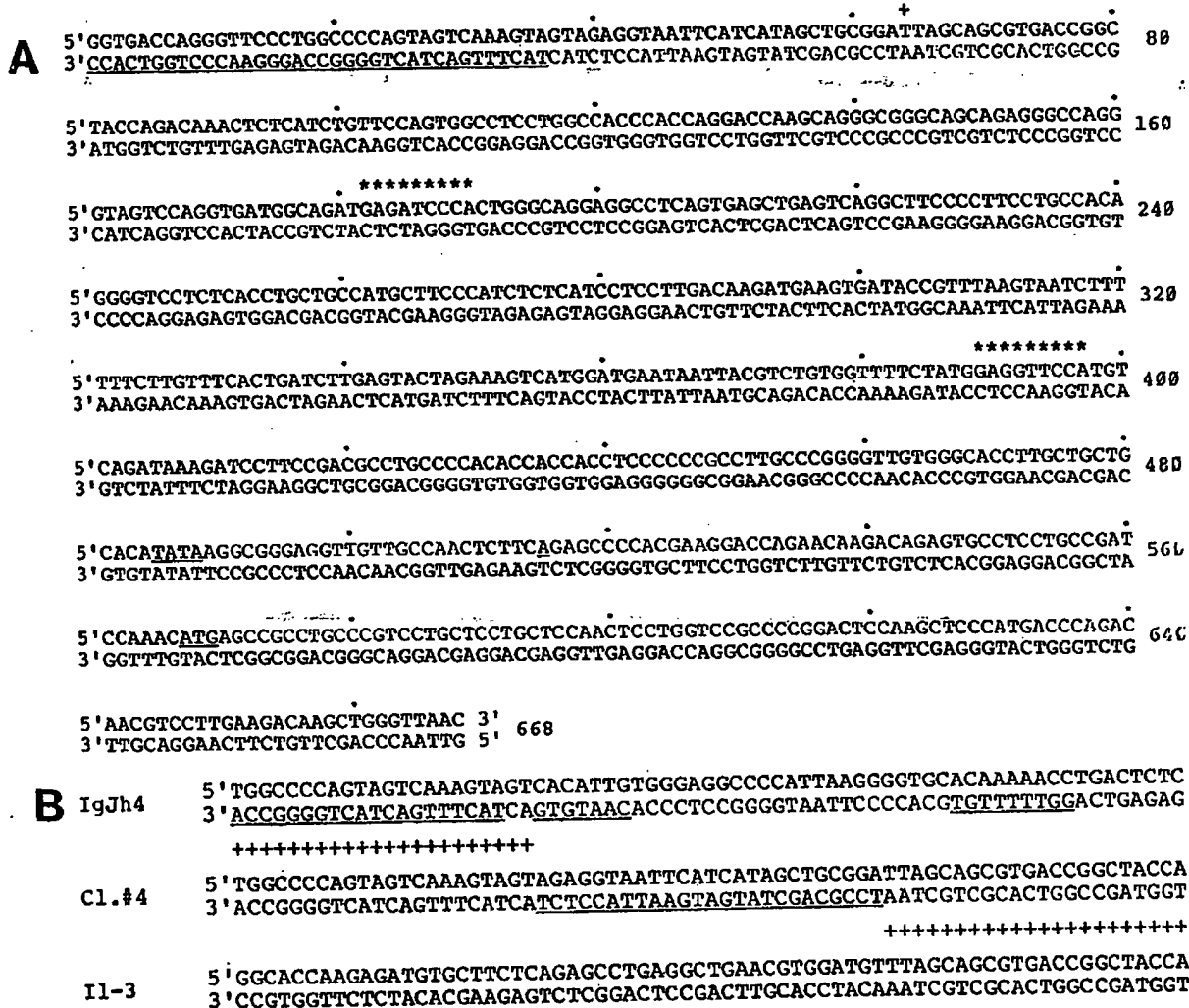


Fig 3. Sequence of t(6;14)(q31;q32) breakpoint region. (A) Nucleotide sequence of the *BstEII/HpaI* fragment indicated on Fig 2. Nucleotides 1 to 36 represent the Jh4 coding region underlined on the coding strand.<sup>9</sup> Nucleotides 39 to 63 are a putative N region. The sequence from position 64 to 668 is that of the germline IL-3 gene.<sup>20</sup> The IL-3 TATA box (485), transcription start (515), and initiation methionine (567) are underlined. Two proposed regulatory sequences in the promoter are marked by asterisks (positions 182 and 389). (B) Comparative sequence of the t(6;14)(q31;q32) breakpoint region. The IgJh4 region is shown with its coding region, heptamer, and nonamer underlined. Clone no. 4 is shown with putative N region sequences underlined. The IL-3 sequence is also shown. A plus sign (+) denotes the identical nucleotide between sequences. No heptamer or nonamer is identified in the IL-3 sequence.



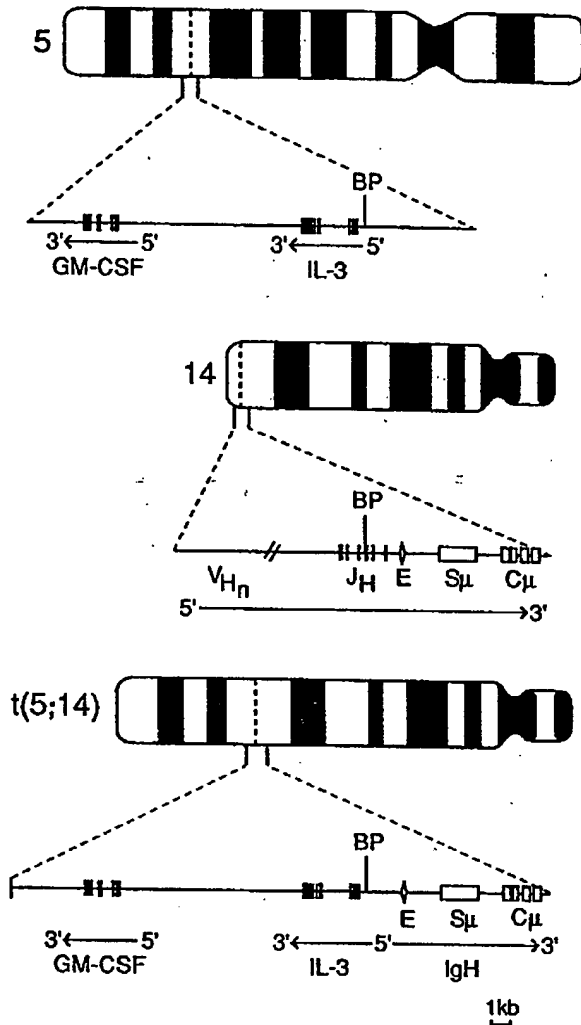


Fig 4. Diagram of the translocation. The normal chromosome 5q31 is shown with the GM-CSF gene telomeric to the IL-3 gene in the transcriptional orientation shown. On normal chromosome 14q32 the V<sub>Hn</sub> regions are telomeric. The t(5;14)(q31;q32) translocation results in the head-to-head orientation of these genes. Symbols are defined in Fig 2. BP, breakpoint position.

intact as no deletions, insertions, or point mutations were detected by restriction mapping of the entire gene and sequencing of part of the gene. The IgH gene has been truncated at the J<sub>H</sub> region, which places the immunoglobulin enhancer within 2.5 kb of the IL-3 gene.<sup>17,18</sup> This leads to the hypothesis that the enhancer is increasing transcription of a structurally normal IL-3 gene. The same mechanism is important for activation of the *c-myc* gene in some cases of Burkitt's lymphoma.<sup>19</sup> An alternate hypothesis is that the elimination of an upstream IL-3 promoter element is crucial to the activation of the IL-3 gene.

The proposed activation of the IL-3 gene suggests that an autocrine loop is important for the pathogenesis of this leukemia.<sup>20</sup> Over-expression of the IL-3 gene coupled with

the presence of the IL-3 receptor in these cells could account for a strong stimulus for proliferation. In this regard, there are data indicating that immature B-lineage lymphocytes and B-lineage leukemias may express the IL-3 receptor.<sup>21,22</sup>

An additional feature of this type of leukemia is the dramatic eosinophilia, consisting of mature forms. It has been hypothesized that the eosinophils do not arise from the malignant clone, but are stimulated by the tumor.<sup>23,24</sup> Because of the known effect of IL-3 on eosinophil differentiation, secretion of high levels of IL-3 by leukemic cells might have a role in the eosinophilia in this type of leukemia.<sup>12</sup>

The data suggest that the recombination mechanism that is active in the IgH gene during normal differentiation has a role in this translocation.<sup>13,14</sup> This is supported by the breakpoint location at the 5' end of J<sub>H</sub>4 and the presence of putative N-region sequences. On the other hand, no recombination signal sequence (heptamer and nonamer) was found in this region on chromosome 5, suggesting that additional factors also played a role. Further studies will elucidate the mechanism of this and other translocations.

In the leukemia we studied, it is possible that the immunoglobulin enhancer also activates the GM-CSF gene, since this gene is probably positioned only 14 kb away (Fig 4). This is known to be within the range of enhancer activation.<sup>25</sup> The interleukin-5 (IL-5) gene maps to chromosome 5q31.<sup>26</sup> Deregulation of the IL-5 gene by this translocation would act synergistically with IL-3 in the stimulation of eosinophil proliferation and differentiation.<sup>27</sup> These and other questions will be answered by the study of more patient samples. We plan to determine whether the t(5;14)(q31;q32) translocation is capable of activating multiple lymphokines simultaneously and whether they cooperate in the generation of this leukemia.

#### REFERENCES

1. Klein G, Klein E: Evolution of tumours and the impact of molecular oncology. *Nature* 315:190, 1985
2. Showe L, Croce C: The role of chromosomal translocations in B- and T-cell neoplasia. *Annu Rev Immunol* 5:253, 1987
3. Hogan T, Koss W, Murgo A, Amato R, Fontana J, VanScoy F: Acute lymphoblastic leukemia with chromosomal 5;14 translocation and hyper eosinophilia: Case report and literature review. *J Clin Oncol* 5:382, 1987
4. Tono-oka T, Sato Y, Matsumoto T, Ueno N, Ohkawa M, Shikano T, Takeda T: Hyper eosinophilic syndrome in acute lymphoblastic leukemia with a chromosome translocation t(5q;14q). *Med Pediatr Oncol* 12:33, 1984
5. Meeker T, Grimaldi JC, O'Rourke R, Loeb J, Juliusson G, Einhorn S: Lack of detectable somatic hypermutation in the V region of the IgH gene of a human chronic B-lymphocytic leukemia. *J Immunol* 141:3394, 1988
6. Ravetch J, Siebenlist U, Korsmeyer S, Waldmann T, Leder P: Structure of the human immunoglobulin  $\mu$  locus: Characterization of embryonic and rearranged J and D genes. *Cell* 27:583, 1981
7. Norrander U, Kempe T, Messing J, Construction of improved M13 vectors using oligodeoxynucleotide-directed mutagenesis. *Gene* 26:101, 1983
8. Foon K, Todd R: Immunologic classification of leukemia and lymphoma. *Blood* 68:1, 1986
9. LeBeau M, Epstein N, O'Brien SJ, Nienhuis AW, Yang Y-C, Clark S, Rowley J: The interleukin-3 gene is located on human

chromosome 5 and is deleted in myeloid leukemias with a deletion of 5q. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 84:5913, 1987

10. LeBeau M, Chandrasekharappi S, Lemons R, Schwartz J, Larson R, Arai N, Westbrook C: Molecular and cytogenetic analysis of chromosome 5 abnormalities in myeloid disorders, in cancer cells, in *Proceedings of Molecular Diagnostics of Human Cancer*. Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, NY, 1989 (in press)

11. Ihle J, Weinstein Y: Immunological regulation of hematopoietic/lymphoid stem cell differentiation by interleukin-3. *Adv Immunol* 39:1, 1986

12. Clark S, Kamen R: The human hematopoietic colony-stimulating factors. *Science* 236:1229, 1987

13. Bakhshi A, Wright J, Graninger W, Seto M, Owens J, Cossman J, Jensen J, Goldman P, Korsmeyer S: Mechanism of the t(14,18) chromosomal translocation: Structural analysis of both derivative 14 and 18 reciprocal partners. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 84:2396, 1987

14. Tsujimoto Y, Louie E, Bashir M, Croce C: The reciprocal partners of both the t(14,18) and the t(11,14) translocations involved in B-cell neoplasms are rearranged by the same mechanism. *Oncogene* 2:347, 1988

15. Erikson J, Finan J, Nowell P, Croce C: Translocation of immunoglobulin VH genes in Burkitt lymphoma. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 80:810, 1982

16. Yang Y-C, Kovacic S, Kriz R, Wolf S, Clark S, Wellems T, Nienhuis A, Epstein N: The human genes for GM-CSF and IL-3 are closely linked in tandem on chromosome 5. *Blood* 71:958, 1988

17. Gillies S, Morrison S, Oi V, Tonegawa S: A tissue-specific transcription enhancer element is located in the major intron of a rearranged immunoglobulin heavy chain gene. *Cell* 33:717, 1983

18. Banerji J, Olson L, Schaffner W: A lymphocyte-specific cellular enhancer is located downstream of the joining region in immunoglobulin heavy chain genes. *Cell* 33:729, 1983

19. Hayday A, Gillies S, Saito H, Wood C, Wiman K, Hayward

W, Tonegawa S: Activation of a translocated human *c-myc* gene by an enhancer in the immunoglobulin heavy-chain locus. *Nature* 307:334, 1984

20. Sporn M, Roberts A: Autocrine growth factors and cancer. *Nature* 313:745, 1985

21. Palacios R, Steinmetz M: IL-3-dependent mouse clones that express B-220 surface antigen, contain Ig genes in germ line configuration, and generate B lymphocytes in vivo. *Cell* 41:727, 1985

22. Uckun F, Gesner T, Song C, Myers D, Mufson A: Leukemic B-cell precursors express functional receptors for human interleukin-3. *Blood* 73:533, 1989

23. Spitzer G, Garson O: Lymphoblastic leukemia with marked eosinophilia: A report of two cases. *Blood* 42:377, 1973

24. Catovsky D, Bernasconi C, Verkonck P, Postma A, Hows J, Berg A, Rees J, Castelli G, Morra E, Galton D: The association of eosinophilia with lymphoblastic leukemia or lymphoma: A study of seven patients. *Br J Haematol* 45:523, 1980

25. Wang X-F, Calame K: The endogenous immunoglobulin heavy chain enhancer can activate tandem Vh promoters separated by a large distance. *Cell* 43:659, 1985

26. Sutherland G, Baker E, Callen D, Campbell H, Young I, Sanderson C, Garson O, Lopez A, Vadas M: Interleukin-5 is at 5q31 and is deleted in the 5q-syndrome. *Blood* 71:1150, 1988

27. Warren D, Moore M: Synergism among interleukin-1, interleukin-3, and interleukin-5 in the production of eosinophils from primitive hemopoietic stem cells. *J Immunol* 140:94, 1988

28. Yang Y-C, Clark S: Molecular cloning of a primate cDNA and the human gene for interleukin-3. *Lymphokines* 15:375, 1988

29. Yang Y-C, Ciarletta A, Temple P, Chung M, Kovacic S, Witek-Giannotti J, Leary A, Kriz R, Donahue R, Wong G, Clark S: Human IL-3 (multi-CSF): Identification by expression cloning of a novel hematopoietic growth factor related to murine IL-3. *Cell* 47:3, 1986

## RAPID COMMUNICATION

# Activation of the Interleukin-3 Gene by Chromosome Translocation in Acute Lymphocytic Leukemia With Eosinophilia

By Timothy C. Meeker, Dan Hardy, Cheryl Willman, Thomas Hogan, and John Abrams

The t(5;14)(q31;q32) translocation from B-lineage acute lymphocytic leukemia with eosinophilia has been cloned from two leukemia samples. In both cases, this translocation joined the IgH gene and the interleukin-3 (IL-3) gene. In one patient, excess IL-3 mRNA was produced by the leukemic cells. In the second patient, serum IL-3 levels were measured and shown to correlate with disease

**A** NUMBER OF chromosome translocations have been associated with human leukemia and lymphoma. In many cases the study of these translocations has led to the discovery or characterization of proto-oncogenes, such as *bcl-2*, *c-abl*, and *c-myc*, that are located adjacent to the translocation.<sup>1,2</sup> It is now widely understood that cancer-associated translocations disrupt nearby proto-oncogenes.

A distinct subtype of acute leukemia is characterized by the triad of B-lineage immunophenotype, eosinophilia, and the t(5;14)(q31;q32) translocation.<sup>3,4</sup> Leukemic cells from such patients have been positive for terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (Tdt), common acute lymphoblastic leukemia antigen (CALLA), and CD19, but negative for surface or cytoplasmic immunoglobulin. In previous work, we cloned the t(5;14) breakpoint from one leukemic sample (Case 1) and determined that the IgH and interleukin-3 (IL-3) genes were joined by this abnormality.<sup>5</sup> In this report, we extend those findings by showing that the t(5;14)(q31;q32) translocation from a second leukemia sample (Case 2) has a similar structure, and we report our study of growth factor expression in these patients.

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

**Samples and Southern blots.** Case 1 has been described.<sup>5,6</sup> Clinical features of Case 2 have been described in detail.<sup>7</sup> DNA isolation and Southern blotting was done using previously described methods.<sup>8</sup> Filters were hybridized with an immunoglobulin Jh probe, a 280 bp *Bam*HI/*Eco*RI genomic IL-3 fragment, and an IL-3 cDNA probe.<sup>7,8</sup>

**Northern blots.** RNA isolation and Northern blotting have been described.<sup>9</sup> Briefly, Northern blots were done by separating 9 µg total RNA on 1% agarose-formaldehyde gels. Equal RNA loading in each lane was confirmed by ethidium bromide staining. Blots were hybridized with an IL-3 cDNA probe extending to the *Xho* I site in exon 5, a 720 bp *Sst* I/*Kpn* I probe derived from intron 2 of the IL-3 gene, a 600 bp *Nhe* I/*Hpa* I IL-5 cDNA probe, and a 500 bp *Pst* I/*Neo* I granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF) cDNA probe.<sup>10-12</sup>

**Polymerase chain reaction.** Primers were designed with *Bam*HI sites for cloning. One primer hybridized to the Jh sequences from the IgH gene (Primer 144:5'-TAGGATCCGACGGTGACCAGGTT), and the other hybridized to the region of the TATA box in the IL-3 gene (Primer 161:5'-AACAGGATCCCGCCTTATATGTGCAG). Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) (95°C for 1 minute, 61°C for 30 seconds, and 72°C for 3 minutes) was done using 500 ng genomic DNA and 50 pmol of each primer in 100 µL containing 67 mmol/L Tris-HCl pH 8.8, 6.7 mmol/L MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 10% dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), 170 µg/mL bovine serum albumin (BSA) (fraction V),

16.6 mmol/L ammonium sulfate, 1.5 mmol/L each dNTP and Taq polymerase (Perkin-Elmer, Norwalk, CT).<sup>13</sup>

**Sequencing.** Sequencing was done by chain termination in M13 vectors.<sup>14</sup> As part of this study, we sequenced a subclone of a normal IL-3 promoter, covering 598 base pairs from a *Sma* I site at position -1240 (with respect to the proposed site of transcription initiation) to an *Nhe* I site at position -642. The plasmid containing this region was a gift from Naoko Arai of the DNAX Research Institute.

© 1990 by The American Society of Hematology.

**Expression in Cos7 cells.** A genomic IL-3 fragment from Case 1 was cloned into the pXM expression vector.<sup>10</sup> Briefly, the *Hind*III/*Sal* I fragment containing the IL-3 gene was subcloned from the previously described phage clone 4 into pUC18.<sup>5</sup> The 2.6 kb fragment extending from the *Sma* I site 61 bp upstream of the IL-3 transcription start to the *Sma* I site in the polylinker was cloned into the blunted *Xho* I site of pXM. The negative control construct was the pXM vector without insert. Plasmids were introduced into Cos7 cells by electroporation, and supernatant was collected after 48 hours in culture.

**TF1 bioassay.** TF-1 cells were passaged in RPMI 1640 supplemented with 10% heat-inactivated fetal bovine serum, 2 mmol L-glutamine, and 1 ng/mL human GM-CSF.<sup>15</sup> Samples and antibodies were diluted in this same medium lacking GM-CSF but containing penicillin and streptomycin. A 25 µL volume of serial dilutions of patient serum was added to wells in a flat bottom 96-well microtiter plate. Rat anti-cytokine monoclonal antibody in a volume of 25 µL was added to appropriate wells and preincubated for 1 hour at 37°C. Fifty microliters of twice washed TF-1 cells were added to each well, giving a final cell concentration of 1 × 10<sup>4</sup> cells per well (final volume, 100 µL). The plate was incubated for 48 hours. The remaining cell viability was determined metabolically by the colori-

From the Division of Hematology/Oncology 111H, Department of Medicine, University of California and the Veterans Administration Medical Center, San Francisco, CA; the Center for Molecular and Cellular Diagnostics, Department of Pathology and Cell Biology, University of New Mexico, Albuquerque, NM; the Division of Hematology/Oncology, Department of Medicine, West Virginia University, Morgantown, WV; and DNAX Research Institute, Palo Alto, CA.

Submitted March 27, 1990; accepted April 19, 1990.  
Supported in part by the University of California Cancer Research Coordinating Committee and University of New Mexico Cancer Center funding from the state of New Mexico. The DNAX Research Institute is supported by Schering-Plough.  
Address reprint requests to Timothy C. Meeker, MD, Division of Hematology/Oncology 111H, Department of Medicine, University of California and the Veterans Administration Medical Center, 4150 Clement St, San Francisco, CA 94121.  
© 1990 by The American Society of Hematology.  
0006-4971/90/7602-0022\$3.00/0

```

IgJh5 5' GA00GTGACCAGGGTTCCTTGGCCCAAGGAGTGGAAACCAAGTGTGTCACATTTGTGACAAACAATGCCAGACCCCGACAAAGAAAGGGGGCCCCCGCACGTC00CT
3' CTGCCACTGGTCCCAAGGAACCGGGTCTCAGCTTGGTCAAACAGTGTAAACAATGTTTACGGTCTGGGGCTGTTTCTTCGCCCGGGGGGGGTGCAGGGA
*****
Clone 5' GACGGTGACCAGGGTTCCTTGGCCCAAGGGTGGAAACCAAGTGTGTCACCGCATGTTATTTGGGGGGATCAAGA0CTCTCAATACAACCTGTCTCTCTGCCAAT
3' CTGCCACTGGTCCCAAGGGAACCGGGTCCCGAGCTTGGTCAAACATGGGGTACAATAA000000CTAGTTCGTGGAGAGTTATGTTGACAGAGGACGGTTA
(-934)*****
IL3 5' CCCCTCTCTGCAAAACCTTGG0CTACTGG0CTGCA0CTGGCAAA0TCCATGCTCAGCAGAGCGGGATCAAGA0CTCTCAATACAACCTGTCTCTCTGCCAAT
3' GGGGAGAGACGTTTGGAA0CGATGAC00GGACGTTGGA0CGTTTAGGTACGAGT0GTGTCTG000CTAGTTCGTGGAGAGTTATGTTGACAGAGGACGGTTA

```

Fig 1. Breakpoint sequences for Case 2. The germline IgJh5 region sequence (protein coding region and recombination signal sequences are underlined) is on top, the translocation sequence from Case 2 (PCR primer sequences and putative N region are underlined) is in the middle, and the germline IL-3 sequence, which we derived from a normal IL-3 clone, is on the bottom.<sup>7</sup> + indicates that each sequence has the same nucleotide. The sequence documents the head-to-head joining of the IL-3 and IgH genes. The breakpoint in the IL-3 gene occurred at position -934 (\*).

metric method of Mosmann using a VMax microtiter plate reader (Molecular Devices, Menlo Park, CA) set at 570 and 650 nm.<sup>16</sup>

**Cytokine immunoassays.** These assays used rat monoclonal anti-cytokine antibodies (10 µg/mL) to coat the wells of a PVC microtiter plate. The capture antibodies used were BVD3-6G8, JES1-39D10, and BVD2-23B6, for the IL-3, IL-5, and GM-CSF assays, respectively. Patient sera were then added (undiluted and diluted 1:2 for IL-3, undiluted for IL-5, and undiluted and diluted 1:5 for GM-CSF). The detecting immunoreagents used were either mouse antiserum to IL-3 or nitroiodophenyl (NIP)-derivatized rat monoclonal antibodies JES1-5A2 and BVD2-21C11, specific for IL-5 and GM-CSF, respectively. Bound antibody was subsequently detected with immunoperoxidase conjugates: horseradish peroxidase (HRP)-labeled goat anti-mouse Ig for IL-3, or HRP-labeled rat (J4 MoAb) anti-NIP for IL-5 and GM-CSF. The chromogenic substrate was 3-3'-azino-bis-benzthiazoline sulfonate (ABTS; Sigma, St Louis, MO). Unknown values were interpolated from standard curves prepared from dilutions of the recombinant factors using Softmax software available with the VMAX microplate reader (Molecular Devices).

## RESULTS

Leukemic DNA from Case 2 was studied by Southern blotting. When digested with the *Hind*III restriction enzyme and hybridized with a human immunoglobulin heavy chain joining region (Jh) probe, a rearranged fragment at approximately 14 kb was detected (data not shown). When reprobed with either of two different IL-3 probes, a rearranged 14 kb

fragment, comigrating with the rearranged Jh fragment, was identified. When leukemic DNA was digested with *Hind*III plus *Eco*RI, a rearranged Jh fragment was detected at 6 kb. The IL-3 probes also identified a comigrating fragment of this size. These experiments indicated that the leukemic sample studied was clonal and that a single fragment contained both Jh and IL-3 sequences, suggesting a translocation had occurred.

To characterize better the joining of the IL-3 gene and the immunoglobulin heavy chain (IgH) gene, the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) was used to clone the translocation.<sup>13</sup> A Jh primer and an IL-3 primer were designed to produce an amplified product in the event of a head-to-head translocation. While control DNA gave no PCR product, Case 2 DNA yielded a PCR-derived fragment of approximately 980 bp, which was cloned and sequenced.

The DNA sequence of the translocation clone from Case 2 confirmed the joining of the Jh region with the promoter of the IL-3 gene in a head-to-head configuration (Fig 1). Sequence analysis indicated that the breakpoint on chromosome 14 was just upstream of the Jh5 coding region. The breakpoint on chromosome 5 occurred 934 bp upstream of the putative site of transcription initiation of the IL-3 gene. We also determined that a putative N sequence of 17 bp was inserted between the chromosome 5 and chromosome 14 sequences during the translocation event.<sup>17,18</sup> Figure 2 shows

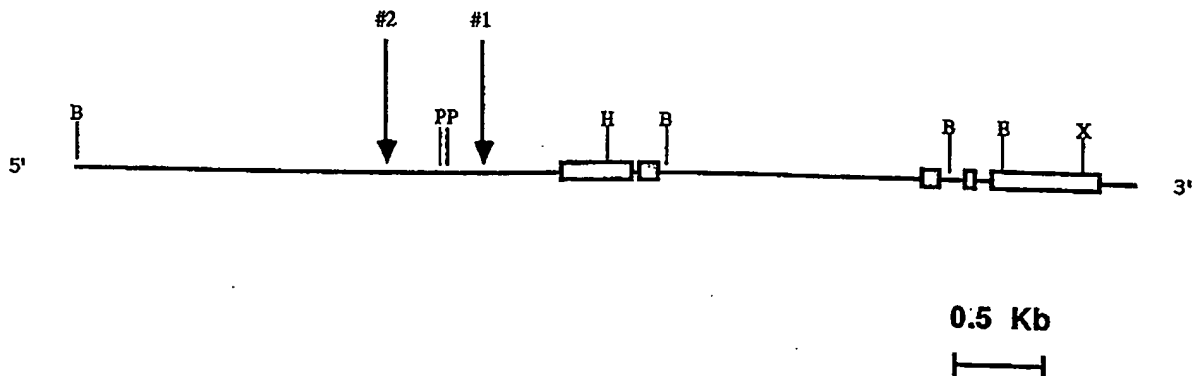


Fig 2. Relationship of chromosome 5 breakpoints to the IL-3 gene. This figure shows the two cloned breakpoints (arrows) in relation to the normal IL-3 gene.<sup>10</sup> One breakpoint occurred at position -462 and the other at -934 (arrows). In both circumstances, the translocations resulted in a head-to-head joining of the IgH gene and the IL-3 gene, leaving the mRNA and protein coding regions of the IL-3 gene intact. Boxes denote the five IL-3 exons; restriction enzymes are (B) *Bam*HI, (P) *Pst*I, (H) *Hpa*I, (E) *Eco*RI, and (X) *Xho*I.

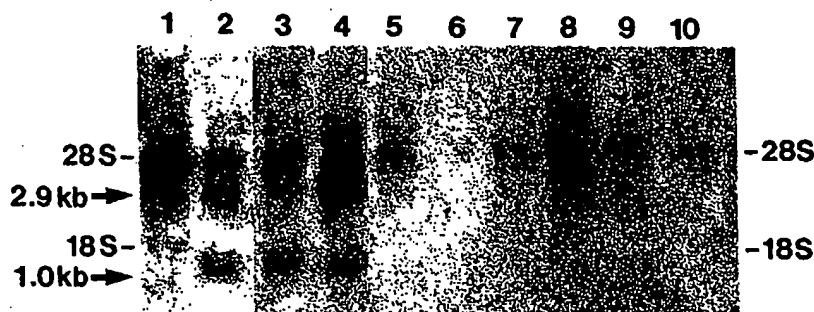


Fig 3. Documentation of IL-3 mRNA over-expression. A Northern blot was prepared and hybridized with a probe for IL-3. Lane 1 contained RNA from unstimulated peripheral blood lymphocytes (PBL) as a negative control. Lane 2 contained RNA from PBL stimulated for 4 hours with concanavalin A (ConA), and lane 3 contained RNA from PBL stimulated with ConA for 48 hours. As in the positive control lanes (2 and 3), a 1 kb band was identified in the leukemic sample from Case 1 (lane 4, lower arrow), suggesting aberrant expression of the IL-3 gene. In addition, the leukemic sample showed over-expression of an unspliced 2.9 kb IL-3 transcript (lane 4, upper arrow). We documented that this represented an unspliced precursor of the mature 1 kb transcript by showing that this band hybridized to a probe from intron 2 of the IL-3 gene. A similar 2.9 kb band was detected in lane 2, suggesting that an IL-3 mRNA of this size is sometimes detectable in normal mitogen-stimulated cells. Lane 5 through 10 represent RNA from six samples of B-lineage acute lymphocytic leukemia without the t(5;14) translocation, indicating that only the sample with the translocation exhibited IL-3 over-expression. Case 2 could not be analyzed by Northern blot because too few cells were available for study.

the locations of the two cloned breakpoints in relation to the IL-3 gene. The two chromosome 5 breakpoints were separated by less than 500 bp.

The genomic structure in Cases 1 and 2 suggested that a normal IL-3 gene product was over-expressed as a result of the altered promoter structure. This would predict that the IL-3 gene on the translocated chromosome was capable of making IL-3 protein. This prediction was tested by expressing a genomic fragment from the translocated allele of Case 1 containing all five IL-3 exons under the control of the SV40 promoter/enhancer in the Cos7 cell line. Cell supernatants were studied in a proliferation assay using the factor dependent erythroleukemic cell line, TF-1. The supernatants derived from transfections using the vector plus insert supported TF-1 proliferation, while supernatants from transfections using the vector alone were negative in this assay (data not shown). Furthermore, the biologic activity could be blocked by an antibody to human IL-3 (BVD3-6G8). This result showed that the translocated allele retained the ability to make IL-3 mRNA and protein.

The level of expression of IL-3 mRNA in leukemic cells from Case 1 was assessed. Northern blotting showed that the mature IL-3 mRNA (approximately 1 kb) and a 2.9 kb unspliced IL-3 mRNA were excessively produced by the leukemia (Fig 3). The 2.9 kb form of the mRNA is also present at low levels in normal peripheral blood T lymphocytes after mitogen activation (Fig 3). Several B-lineage acute leukemia samples without the t(5;14) translocation had undetectable levels of IL-3 mRNA in these experiments. In addition, although genes for GM-CSF and IL-5 map close to the IL-3 gene and might have been deregulated by the translocation, no IL-5 or GM-CSF mRNA could be detected in the leukemic sample (data not shown).<sup>19,20</sup>

Three serum samples from Case 2 were assayed by immunoassay for levels of IL-3, GM-CSF, and IL-5 (Table 1). Serum IL-3 could be detected and correlated with the clinical course. When the patient's leukemic cell burden was

highest, the IL-3 level was highest. No serum GM-CSF or IL-5 could be detected.

Since the IL-3 immunoassay measured only immunoreactive factor, we confirmed that biologically active IL-3 was present by using the TF-1 bioassay. This bioassay can be rendered monospecific using appropriate neutralizing monoclonal antibodies specific for IL-3, IL-5, or GM-CSF. We observed that sera from 1-16-84 and 3-14-84 contained TF-1 stimulating activity that could be blocked with anti-IL-3 MoAb (BVD3-6G8), but not with MoAbs to IL-5 (JES1-39D10) or GM-CSF (BVD2-23B6) (Fig 4; GM-CSF data not shown). The amount of neutralizable bioactivity in these two samples correlated very well with the difference in IL-3 levels obtained by immunoassay for these samples. Furthermore, the failure to block TF-1 proliferating activity with either anti-IL-5 or anti-GM-CSF was consistent with the inability to measure these factors by immunoassay and

Table 1. Peripheral Blood Counts and Growth Factor Levels at Different Times in Case 2

	Sample Date		
	11/15/83	1/16/84	3/14/84
Peripheral blood counts (cells/ $\mu$ L)			
WBC	81,800	116,500	12,300
Lymphoblasts	0	33,785	0
Eosinophils	46,626	73,080	616
Serum growth factor levels (pg/mL)			
IL-3	<444	7,995	1,051
GM-CSF	<15	<15	<15
IL-5	<50	<50	<50

Peripheral blood counts from Case 2 at three different time points with the corresponding growth factor levels quantified by immunoassay. The patient received chemotherapy between 1/16/84 and 3/14/84 to lower his leukemic burden.<sup>3</sup> No serum samples were available for a similar analysis of Case 1.

Abbreviation: WBC, white blood cells.

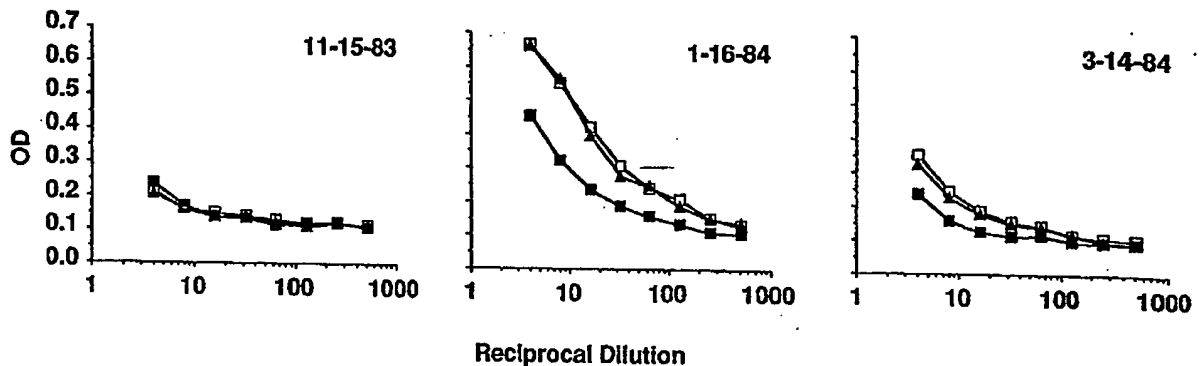


Fig 4. Bioassay of serum IL-3. Leukemic patient sera were tested for bioactive IL-3 and IL-5 in the TF-1 proliferation assay. The reciprocal of the dilution is indicated on the horizontal axis and the optical density indicating the amount of proliferation is indicated on the vertical axis. Serum from all three time points was assayed simultaneously. The assay was rendered monospecific by using a 1  $\mu$ g/mL final concentration of monoclonal rat anti-IL-3, BVD3-6G8 (■), or anti-IL-5, JES1-39D10 (▲); □ indicates no MoAb. On 1/16/84 and 3/14/84, inhibition of proliferation was evident in the presence of anti-IL-3 antibody, documenting serum levels of IL-3 on those days. Serum IL-5 was not detected in this assay, as anti-IL-5 did not alter TF-1 proliferation.

indicated that these other myeloid growth factors were not detectably circulating in the serum of this patient.

#### DISCUSSION

In this report, we have extended our analysis of acute lymphocytic leukemia and eosinophilia associated with the t(5;14) translocation. In both cases we have studied, we have documented the joining of the IL-3 gene from chromosome 5 to the IgH gene from chromosome 14. The breakpoints on chromosome 5 are within 500 bp of each other, suggesting that additional breakpoints will be clustered in a small region of the IL-3 promoter. The PCR assay we have developed will be useful in the screening of additional clinical samples for this abnormality.

The finding of a disrupted IL-3 promoter associated with an otherwise normal IL-3 gene implied that this translocation might lead to the over-expression of a normal IL-3 gene product. In this work, we have documented that this is true. In addition, neither GM-CSF nor IL-5 are over-expressed by the leukemic cells. Furthermore, in one patient, serum IL-3 could be measured and correlated with disease activity. To our knowledge, this is the first measurement of human IL-3 in serum and its association with a disease process. The measurement of serum IL-3 in this and other clinical settings may now be indicated.

The finding of the IL-3 gene adjacent to a cancer-associated translocation breakpoint suggests that its activation is important for oncogenesis. It is our thesis that an autocrine loop for IL-3 is important for the evolution of this leukemia.<sup>21</sup> The excessive IL-3 production that we have documented would be one feature of such an autocrine loop. The final proof of our thesis must await additional data. In particular, from the study of additional clinical samples, it will be necessary to document that the IL-3 receptor is present on the leukemic cells and that anti-IL-3 antibody decreases proliferation of the leukemia *in vitro*.

An important aspect of this work is the suggestion of a therapeutic approach for this disease. If an autocrine loop for IL-3 can be documented in this disease, attempts to lower circulating IL-3 levels or block the interaction of IL-3 with its receptor may prove useful. Because it is also possible that the eosinophilia in these patients is mediated by the paracrine effects of leukemia-derived IL-3, similar interventions may improve this aspect of the disease. Antibodies or engineered ligands to accomplish these goals may soon be available.

#### ACKNOWLEDGMENT

We thank Naoko Arai, Ken-ichi Arai, R. O'Rourke, J. Grimaldi, and T. O'Connell for technical assistance and/or helpful discussions.

#### REFERENCES

- Klein G, Klein E: Evolution of tumours and the impact of molecular oncology. *Nature* 315:190, 1985
- Showe L, Croce C: The role of chromosomal translocations in B- and T-cell neoplasia. *Ann Rev Immunol* 5:253, 1987
- Hogan T, Koss W, Murgo A, Amato R, Fontana J, VanScoy F: Acute lymphoblastic leukemia with chromosomal 5;14 translocation and hyper eosinophilia: Case report and literature review. *J Clin Oncol* 5:382, 1987
- Tono-oka T, Sato Y, Matsumoto T, Ueno N, Ohkawa M, Shikano T, Takeda T: Hyper eosinophilic syndrome in acute lymphoblastic leukemia with a chromosome translocation t(5q;14q). *Med Ped Oncol* 12:33, 1984
- Grimaldi J, Meeker T: The t(5;14) chromosomal translocation in a case of acute lymphocytic leukemia joins the interleukin-3 gene to the immunoglobulin heavy chain gene. *Blood* 73:2081, 1989
- McConnell T, Foucar K, Hardy W, Saiki J: Three-way reciprocal chromosomal translocation in an acute lymphoblastic leukemia patient with hyper eosinophilia syndrome. *J Clin Oncol* 5:2042, 1987
- Ravetch J, Siebenlist U, Korsmeyer S, Waldmann T, Leder P: Structure of the human immunoglobulin m locus: Characterization of embryonic and rearranged J and D genes. *Cell* 27:583, 1981
- Otsuka T, Miyajima A, Brown N, Otsu K, Abrams J, Saeland S, Caux C, Malefijt R, Vries J, Meyerson P, Yokota K, Gemmel L,

Rennick D, Lee F, Arai N, Arai K, Yokota T: Isolation and characterization of an expressible cDNA encoding human IL-3. *J Immunol* 140:2288, 1988

9. Sambrook J, Fritsch E, Maniatis T: *Molecular Cloning*. Cold Spring Harbor, NY, Cold Spring Harbor Press, 1989

10. Yang Y-C, Ciarletta A, Temple P, Chung M, Kovacic S, Wittek-Giannotti J, Leary A, Kriz R, Donahue R, Wong G, Clark S: Human IL-3 (multi-CSF): Identification by expression cloning of a novel hematopoietic growth factor related to murine IL-3. *Cell* 47:3, 1986

11. Yokota T, Coffman R, Hagiwara H, Rennick D, Takebe Y, Yokota K, Gemmell L, Shrader B, Yang G, Meyerson P, Luh J, Hoy P, Pene J, Briere F, Spits H, Banchereau J, Vries J, Lee F, Arai N, Arai K: Isolation and characterization of lymphokine cDNA clones encoding mouse and human IgA-enhancing factor and eosinophil colony-stimulating factor activities: Relationship to interleukin 5. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 84:7388, 1987

12. Wong G, Wittek J, Temple P, Wilkens K, Leary A, Luxenberg D, Jones S, Brown E, Kay R, Orr E, Shoemaker C, Golde D, Kaufman R, Hewick R, Wang E, Clark S: Human GM-CSF: Molecular cloning of the complementary DNA and purification of the natural and recombinant proteins. *Science* 228:810, 1985

13. Saiki R, Scharf S, Faloona F, Mullis K, Horn G, Erlich H, Arnheim N: Enzymatic amplification of B-globin genomic sequences and restriction site analysis for diagnosis of sickle cell anemia. *Science* 230:1350, 1985

14. Norrander U, Kempe T, Messing J: Construction of improved

M13 vectors using oligodeoxynucleotide-directed mutagenesis. *Gene* 26:101, 1983

15. Kitamura T, Tange T, Terasawa T, Chiba S, Kuwaki T, Miyagawa K, Piao Y, Miyazono K, Urabe A, Takaku F: Establishment and characterization of a unique human cell line that proliferates dependently on GM-CSF, IL-3, or erythropoietin. *J Cell Physiol* 140:323, 1989

16. Mosmann T: Rapid colorimetric assay for cellular growth and survival: Application to proliferation and cytotoxicity assays. *J Immunol Methods* 65:55, 1983

17. Bakhshi A, Wright J, Graninger W, Seto M, Owens J, Cossman J, Jensen J, Goldman P, Korsmeyer S: Mechanism of the t(14;18) chromosomal translocation: Structural analysis of both derivative 14 and 18 reciprocal partners. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 84:2396, 1987

18. Tsujimoto Y, Louie E, Bashir M, Croce C: The reciprocal partners of both the t(14;18) and the t(11;14) translocations involved in B-cell neoplasms are rearranged by the same mechanism. *Oncogene* 2:347, 1988

19. Yang Y-C, Kovacic S, Kriz R, Wolf S, Clark S, Wellemans T, Nienhuis A, Epstein N: The human genes for GM-CSF and IL-3 are closely linked in tandem on chromosome 5. *Blood* 71:958, 1988

20. Sutherland G, Baker E, Callen D, Campbell H, Young I, Sanderson C, Garson O, Lopez A, Vadas M: Interleukin-5 is at 5q31 and is deleted in the 5q- syndrome. *Blood* 71:1150, 1988

21. Sporn M, Roberts A: Autocrine growth factors and cancer. *Nature* 313:745, 1985

## Clinical and Pathologic Significance of the *c-erbB-2* (*HER-2/neu*) Oncogene

Timothy P. Singleton and John G. Strickler

The *c-erbB-2* oncogene was first shown to have clinical significance in 1987 by Slamon et al,<sup>79</sup> who reported that *c-erbB-2* DNA amplification in breast carcinomas correlated with decreased survival in patients with metastasis to axillary lymph nodes. Subsequent studies, however, of *c-erbB-2* activation in breast carcinoma reached conflicting conclusions about its clinical significance. This oncogene also has been reported to have clinical and pathologic implications in other neoplasms. Our review summarizes these various studies and examines the clinical relevance of *c-erbB-2* activation, which has not been emphasized in recent reviews.<sup>37,38,55</sup> The molecular biology of the *c-erbB-2* oncogene has been extensively reviewed<sup>37,38,55</sup> and will be discussed only briefly here.

### BACKGROUND

The *c-erbB-2* oncogene was discovered in the 1980s by three lines of investigation. The *neu* oncogene was detected as a mutated transforming gene in neuroblastomas induced by ethylnitrosurea treatment of fetal rats.<sup>8,73,74,76</sup> The *c-erbB-2* was a human gene discovered by its homology to the retroviral gene *v-erbB*.<sup>33,49,76</sup> *HER-2* was isolated by screening a human genomic DNA library for homology with *v-erbB*.<sup>24</sup> When the DNA sequences were determined subsequently, *c-erbB-2*, *HER-2*, and *neu* were found to represent the same gene. Recently, the *c-erbB-2* oncogene also has been referred to as *NGL*.

The *c-erbB-2* DNA is located on human chromosome 17q21<sup>24,33,66</sup> and codes for *c-erbB-2* mRNA (4.6 kb), which translates *c-erbB-2* protein (p185). This



protein is a normal component of cytoplasmic membranes. The *c-erbB-2* oncogene is homologous with, but not identical to, *c-erbB-1*, which is located on chromosome 7 and codes for the epidermal growth factor receptor.<sup>8,103</sup> The *c-erbB-2* protein is a receptor on cell membranes and has intracellular tyrosine kinase activity and an extracellular binding domain.<sup>9,105</sup> Electron microscopy with a polyclonal antibody detects *c-erbB-2* immunoreactivity on cytoplasmic membranes of neoplasms, especially on microvilli and the non-villous outer cell membrane.<sup>61</sup> In normal cells, immunohistochemical reactivity for *c-erbB-2* is frequently present at the basolateral membrane or the cytoplasmic membrane's brush border.<sup>22,62</sup>

There is experimental evidence that *c-erbB-2* protein may be involved in the pathogenesis of breast neoplasia. Overproduction of otherwise normal *c-erbB-2* protein can transform a cell line into a malignant phenotype.<sup>25</sup> Also, when the *neu* oncogene containing an activating point mutation is placed in transgenic mice with a strong promoter for increased expression, the mice develop multiple independent mammary adenocarcinomas.<sup>13,63</sup> In other experiments, monoclonal antibodies against the *neu* protein inhibit the growth (in nude mice) of a *neu*-transformed cell line,<sup>26-28</sup> and immunization of mice with *neu* protein protects them from subsequent tumor challenge with the *neu*-transformed cell line.<sup>14</sup> Some authors have speculated that the use of antagonists for the unknown ligand could be useful in future chemotherapy.<sup>65</sup> Further review of this experimental evidence is beyond the scope of this article.

The *c-erbB-2* activation most likely occurs at an early stage of neoplastic development. This hypothesis is supported by the presence of *c-erbB-2* activation in both in situ and invasive breast carcinomas. In addition, studies of metastatic breast carcinomas usually demonstrate uniform *c-erbB-2* activation at multiple sites in the same patient,<sup>11,12,39,41,52</sup> although *c-erbB-2* activation has rarely been detected in metastatic lesions but not in the primary tumor.<sup>57,66,107</sup> Even more rarely, *c-erbB-2* DNA amplification has been detected in a primary breast carcinoma but not in its lymph node metastasis.<sup>5</sup> In patients who have bilateral breast neoplasms, both lesions have similar patterns of *c-erbB-2* activation, but only a few such cases have been studied.<sup>11</sup>

### MECHANISMS OF *c-erbB-2* ACTIVATION

The most common mechanism of *c-erbB-2* activation is genomic DNA amplification, which almost always results in overproduction of *c-erbB-2* mRNA and protein.<sup>17,34,65,81</sup> The *c-erbB-2* amplification may stabilize the overproduction of mRNA or protein through unknown mechanisms. Human breast carcinomas with *c-erbB-2* amplification contain 2 to 40 times more *c-erbB-2* DNA<sup>4,5</sup> and 4 to 128 times more *c-erbB-2* mRNA<sup>34,90</sup> than found in normal tissue. Most human breast carcinomas with *c-erbB-2* amplification have 2 to 15 times more *c-erbB-2* DNA. Tumors with greater amplification tend to have greater overproduction.<sup>17,52,65</sup> The non-mammary neoplasms that have been studied tend to have

similar levels of *c-erbB-2* amplification or overproduction relative to the corresponding normal tissue.

The second most common mechanism of *c-erbB-2* activation is overproduction of *c-erbB-2* mRNA and protein without amplification of *c-erbB-2* DNA.<sup>81</sup> The quantities of mRNA and protein usually are less than those in amplified cases and may approach the small quantities present in normal breast or other tissues.<sup>17,60,59</sup> The *c-erbB-2* protein overproduction without mRNA overproduction or DNA amplification has been described in a few human breast carcinoma cell lines.<sup>47</sup>

Other rare mechanisms of *c-erbB-2* activation have been reported. Translocations involving the *c-erbB-2* gene have been described in a few mammary and gastric carcinomas, although some reported cases may represent restriction fragment length polymorphisms or incomplete restriction enzyme digestions that mimic translocations.<sup>31,63,75,84,80,108</sup> A single point mutation in the transmembrane portion of *neu* has been described in rat neuroblastomas induced by ethylnitrosurea.<sup>9,65</sup> The mutated *neu* protein has increased tyrosine kinase activity and aggregates at the cell membrane.<sup>10,83,85</sup> Although there has been speculation that some of the amplified *c-erbB-2* genes may contain point mutations,<sup>46</sup> none has been detected in primary human neoplasms.<sup>41,53,81</sup>

## TECHNIQUES FOR DETECTING *c-erbB-2* ACTIVATION

### Detection of *c-erbB-2* DNA Amplification

Amplification of *c-erbB-2* DNA is usually detected by DNA dot blot or Southern blot hybridization. In the dot blot method, the extracted DNA is placed directly on a nylon membrane and hybridized with a *c-erbB-2* DNA probe. In the Southern blot method, the extracted DNA is treated with a restriction enzyme, and the fragments are separated by electrophoresis, transferred to a nylon membrane, and hybridized with a *c-erbB-2* DNA probe. In both techniques, *c-erbB-2* amplification is quantified by comparing the intensity (measured by densitometry) of the hybridization bands from the sample with those from control tissue.

Several technical problems may complicate the measurement of *c-erbB-2* DNA amplification. First, the extracted tumor DNA may be excessively degraded or diluted by DNA from stromal cells.<sup>81</sup> Second, the *c-erbB-2* DNA probe must be carefully chosen and labeled. For example, oligonucleotide *c-erbB-2* probes may not be sensitive enough for measuring a low level of *c-erbB-2* amplification, because diploid copy numbers can be difficult to detect (unpublished data). Third, the total amounts of DNA in the sample and control tissue must be compensated for, often with a probe to an unamplified gene. Many studies have used control probes to genes on chromosome 17, the location of *c-erbB-2*, to correct for possible alterations in chromosome number. Identical results, however, are obtained by using control probes to genes on other chromosomes,<sup>5,65,80</sup> with rare exception.<sup>17</sup> Studies using control probes to the beta-

globin gene must be interpreted with caution, because one allele of this gene is deleted occasionally in breast carcinomas.<sup>3</sup>

Amplification of *c-erbB-2* DNA was assessed by using the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) in one recent study.<sup>32</sup> Oligoprimers for the *c-erbB-2* gene and a control gene are added to the sample's DNA, and PCR is performed. If the sample contains more copies of *c-erbB-2* DNA than of the control gene, the *c-erbB-2* DNA is replicated preferentially.

#### Detection of *c-erbB-2* mRNA Overproduction

Overproduction of *c-erbB-2* mRNA usually is measured by RNA dot blot or Northern blot hybridization. Both techniques require extraction of RNA but otherwise are analogous to DNA dot blot and Southern blot hybridization. Use of PCR for detection of *c-erbB-2* mRNA has been described in two recent abstracts.<sup>33,34</sup>

Overproduction of *c-erbB-2* mRNA can be measured by in situ hybridization. Sections are mounted on glass slides, treated with protease, hybridized with a radiolabeled probe, washed, treated with nuclease to remove unbound probe, and developed for autoradiography. Silver grains are seen only over tumor cells that overproduce *c-erbB-2* mRNA. Negative control probes are used.<sup>35,36,106</sup> Our experience indicates that these techniques are relatively insensitive for detecting *c-erbB-2* mRNA overproduction in routinely processed tissue. Although the sensitivity may be increased by modifications that allow simultaneous detection of *c-erbB-2* DNA and mRNA, in situ hybridization still is cumbersome and expensive (unpublished data).

All of the above *c-erbB-2* mRNA detection techniques have several problems that make them more difficult to perform than techniques for detecting DNA amplification. One major problem is the rapid degradation of RNA in tissue that is not immediately frozen or fixed. In addition, during the detection procedure, RNA can be degraded by RNase, a ubiquitous enzyme, which must be eliminated meticulously from laboratory solutions. Third, control probes to genes that are uniformly expressed in the tissue of interest need to be carefully selected.

#### Detection of *c-erbB-2* Protein Overproduction

The most accurate methods for detecting *c-erbB-2* protein overproduction are the Western blot method and immunoprecipitation. Both techniques can document the binding specificity of various antibodies against *c-erbB-2* protein. In Western blot studies, protein is extracted from the tissue, separated by electrophoresis (according to size), transferred to a membrane, and detected by using antibodies to *c-erbB-2*. In immunoprecipitation studies, antibodies against *c-erbB-2* are added to a tumor lysate, and the resulting protein-antibody precipitate is separated by gel electrophoresis and stained for protein. Both Western blot and immunoprecipitation are useful research tools but currently are not practical for diagnostic pathology. Two recent abstracts have described an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) for detection of *c-erbB-2* protein.<sup>18,45</sup>

Overproduction of *c-erbB-2* protein is most commonly assessed by various immunohistochemical techniques. These procedures often generate conflicting results, which are explained at least partially by three factors. First, various studies have used different polyclonal and monoclonal antibodies. Because some polyclonal antibodies recognize weak bands in addition to the *c-erbB-2* protein band on Western blot or immunoprecipitation, the results of these studies should be interpreted with caution.<sup>32,36,47,61</sup> Even some monoclonal antibodies immunoprecipitate protein bands in addition to *c-erbB-2* (p185).<sup>30,59,60</sup> Second, tissue fixation contributes to variability between studies. For example, some antibodies detect *c-erbB-2* protein only in frozen tissue and do not react in fixed tissue. In general, formalin fixation diminishes the sensitivity of immunohistochemical methods and decreases the number of reactive cells.<sup>61,66</sup> When Bouin's fixative is used, there may be a higher percentage of positive cases.<sup>62</sup> Third, minimal criteria for interpreting immunohistochemical staining are generally lacking. Although there is general agreement that distinct crisp cytoplasmic membrane staining is diagnostic for *c-erbB-2* activation in breast carcinoma, the number of positive cells and the staining intensity required to diagnose *c-erbB-2* protein overproduction varies from study to study and from antibody to antibody. Degradation of *c-erbB-2* protein is not a problem because it can be detected in intact form more than 24 hours after tumor resection without fixation or freezing.<sup>64</sup>

## ACTIVATION OF *c-erbB-2* IN BREAST LESIONS

### Incidence of *c-erbB-2* Activation

Most studies of *c-erbB-2* oncogene activation do not specify histological subtypes of infiltrating breast carcinoma. Amplification of *c-erbB-2* DNA was found in 19.1 percent (519 of 2715) of invasive carcinomas in 25 studies (Table 1), and *c-erbB-2* mRNA or protein overproduction was detected in 20.9 percent (566 of 2714) of invasive carcinomas in 20 studies. Twelve studies have documented *c-erbB-2* mRNA or protein overproduction in 15 percent (88 of 604) of carcinomas that lacked *c-erbB-2* DNA amplification.

The incidence of *c-erbB-2* activation in infiltrating breast carcinoma varies with the histological subtype. Approximately 22 percent (142 of 650) of infiltrating ductal carcinomas have *c-erbB-2* activation, as expected from the above data. Other variants of breast carcinoma with frequent *c-erbB-2* activation are inflammatory carcinoma (62 percent, 54 of 87), Paget's disease (82 percent, 9 of 11), and medullary carcinoma (22 percent, 5 of 23). In contrast, *c-erbB-2* activation is infrequent in infiltrating lobular carcinoma (7 percent, 5 of 73) and tubular carcinoma (7 percent, 1 of 15).

The *c-erbB-2* protein overproduction is present in 44 percent (44 of 100) of ductal carcinomas in situ and especially comedocarcinoma in situ (68 percent, 49 of 72). The micropapillary type of ductal carcinoma in situ also tends to have *c-erbB-2* activation,<sup>40,64,68</sup> especially if larger cells are present. The greater fre-

TABLE 1. c-erbB-2 ACTIVATION IN MALIGNANT HUMAN BREAST NEOPLASMS

Histological Diagnosis	c-erbB-2 DNA Amplification <sup>a</sup>	c-erbB-2 mRNA Overproduction	c-erbB-2 Protein Overproduction <sup>b</sup>
Carcinoma, not otherwise specified	146/528, <sup>61</sup> 52/310, <sup>17</sup>	42/180, <sup>62</sup> 49/126, <sup>36</sup>	118/728, <sup>66b</sup>
	52/291, <sup>10</sup> 28/176, <sup>67</sup>	19/62, <sup>65</sup> 19/57, <sup>60</sup>	58/330, <sup>17b</sup> 47/313, <sup>68</sup>
	17/167, <sup>13</sup> 22/141, <sup>25</sup>	3/11, <sup>60</sup> 6/10, <sup>60</sup> 3/9 <sup>61</sup>	17/195, <sup>11</sup> 32/191, <sup>69</sup>
	14/136, <sup>27</sup> 12/122, <sup>4</sup>		31/185, <sup>10c</sup> 34/102, <sup>4c</sup>
	19/103, <sup>29</sup> 15/96, <sup>90</sup>		24/53, <sup>62b</sup> 23/47, <sup>13</sup>
	16/86, <sup>111</sup> 17/73, <sup>17</sup>		22/45, <sup>6</sup> 11/36, <sup>64</sup>
	16/66, <sup>42</sup> 6/61, <sup>50</sup>		7/24, <sup>61</sup> 1/10 <sup>61</sup>
	11/67, <sup>22</sup> 10/57, <sup>25</sup>		
	13/61, <sup>10</sup> 8/49, <sup>21</sup>		
	10/36, <sup>22</sup> 12/36, <sup>94</sup>		
	1/25, <sup>15</sup> 7/24, <sup>61</sup>		
	7/15, <sup>31</sup> 7/10, <sup>64</sup>		
	2/10 <sup>107</sup>		
	Carcinoma, type not specified but lacking c-erbB-2 DNA amplification	—	18/136, <sup>61</sup> 14/73, <sup>24</sup>
		8/16, <sup>65</sup> 0/8, <sup>60</sup> 1/4, <sup>31</sup>	13/35, <sup>13</sup> 14/29, <sup>62b</sup>
		0/3 <sup>60</sup>	1/28, <sup>62</sup> 3/24, <sup>64</sup>
Infiltrating ductal carcinoma	21/118, <sup>62</sup> 23/107, <sup>24</sup>	35/65 <sup>24</sup>	0/17 <sup>61</sup>
	17/50, <sup>44</sup> 7/37 <sup>98</sup>		22/137, <sup>40</sup> 14/89, <sup>69</sup>
	14/53 (comedo-carcinoma) <sup>16</sup> 3/33 (tubuloductal carcinoma) <sup>16</sup>		9/34 <sup>69</sup>

Inflammatory carcinoma	33/60, <sup>55</sup> 3/6 <sup>52</sup>	46/75 <sup>55</sup>	5/6 <sup>52b</sup>
Paget's disease	—	—	5/6, <sup>40</sup> 2/3, <sup>54</sup> 2/2 <sup>52</sup>
Tubular carcinoma	0/5, <sup>19</sup> 0/1 <sup>53</sup>	—	1/8 <sup>40</sup>
Medullary carcinoma	2/4, <sup>18</sup> 0/1 <sup>54</sup>	0/1 <sup>54</sup>	1/12, <sup>40</sup> 1/3, <sup>58</sup> 1/2, <sup>82</sup>
Mucinous carcinoma	0/1, <sup>19</sup> 0/1 <sup>53</sup>	—	0/1 <sup>39</sup>
Invasive papillary carcinoma	0/2 <sup>54</sup>	—	1/2 <sup>53</sup>
Infiltrating lobular carcinoma	1/15, <sup>16</sup> 0/6 <sup>54</sup>	1/5 <sup>54</sup>	2/27, <sup>82</sup> 0/12, <sup>40</sup> 0/9, <sup>58</sup>
Mammary fibrosarcoma	0/1 <sup>53</sup>	—	1/5 <sup>58</sup>
"Benign cystosarcoma"	—	—	0/1 <sup>58</sup>
Ductal CIS <sup>a</sup> with minimal invasion	3/5 <sup>82</sup>	—	—
Ductal CIS	0/2 <sup>54</sup>	1/2 <sup>54</sup>	33/74, <sup>40</sup> 10/24 <sup>59</sup>
Ductal CIS, solid or comedo type	—	—	20/33, <sup>64</sup> 19/29, <sup>82</sup>
Ductal CIS, micropapillary type	—	—	10/10 <sup>54</sup>
Ductal CIS, micropapillary or cribriform type	—	—	10/10 <sup>58</sup>
Ductal CIS, papillary or cribriform type	—	—	1(local)/14 <sup>54</sup>
Lobular CIS	—	—	0/16, <sup>82</sup> 1/9, <sup>64</sup> 0/3 <sup>40</sup>
	—	—	0/16 <sup>40</sup>

<sup>a</sup>Shown as number of cases with activation/number of cases studied; reference is given as a superscript.

<sup>b</sup>These protein studies used Western blots; the rest used immunohistochemical methods.

<sup>c</sup>CIS = carcinoma in situ.

quency of *c-erbB-2* protein overproduction in comedocarcinoma in situ, compared with infiltrating ductal carcinoma, could be explained by the fact that many infiltrating ductal carcinomas arise from other types of intraductal carcinoma, which show *c-erbB-2* activation infrequently. Others have speculated that carcinoma in situ with *c-erbB-2* activation tends to regress or to lose *c-erbB-2* activation during progression to invasion.<sup>40,68,62</sup> Infiltrating and in situ components of ductal carcinoma, however, usually are similar with respect to *c-erbB-2* activation,<sup>11,39</sup> although some authors have noted more heterogeneity of the immunohistochemical staining pattern in invasive than in in situ carcinoma.<sup>43,42,68</sup> Activation of *c-erbB-2* is infrequent in lobular carcinoma in situ. If lesions contain more than one histological pattern of carcinoma in situ, the *c-erbB-2* protein overproduction tends to occur in the comedocarcinoma in situ but may include other areas of carcinoma in situ.<sup>42,54,68</sup> Overproduction of *c-erbB-2* protein in ductal carcinoma in situ correlates with larger cell size and a periductal lymphoid infiltrate.<sup>68</sup>

Activation of *c-erbB-2* has not been identified in benign breast lesions, including fibrocystic disease, fibroadenomas, and radial scars (Table 2). Strong membrane immunohistochemical reactivity for *c-erbB-2* has not been described in atypical ductal hyperplasia, although weak accentuation of membrane staining has been noted infrequently.<sup>39,42,54</sup> In normal breast tissue, *c-erbB-2* DNA is diploid, and *c-erbB-2* is expressed at lower levels than in activated tumors.<sup>34,33,63,68</sup>

These preliminary data suggest that *c-erbB-2* activation may not be useful for resolving many of the common problems in diagnostic surgical pathology. For example, *c-erbB-2* activation is infrequent in tubular carcinoma and radial scars. In addition, because *c-erbB-2* activation is unusual in atypical ductal hyperplasia, cribriform carcinoma in situ, and papillary carcinoma in situ, detection of *c-erbB-2* activation in these lesions may not be helpful in their differential diagnosis. The histological features of comedocarcinoma in situ, which commonly overproduces *c-erbB-2*, are unlikely to be mistaken for those of benign lesions. Activation of

TABLE 2. *c-erbB-2* ACTIVATION IN BENIGN HUMAN BREAST LESIONS

Histological Diagnosis	<i>c-erbB-2</i> DNA Amplification <sup>a</sup>	<i>c-erbB-2</i> mRNA Overproduction	<i>c-erbB-2</i> Protein Overproduction
Fibrocystic disease	0/10 <sup>33</sup>	—	0/32, <sup>39</sup> 0/9, <sup>68</sup> 0/8 <sup>68</sup>
Atypical ductal hyperplasia	—	—	2(weak)/21, <sup>54</sup> 1(cytoplasmic)/13 <sup>39</sup>
Benign ductal hyperplasia	—	—	0/12 <sup>39</sup>
Sclerosing adenosis	—	—	0/4 <sup>39</sup>
Fibroadenomas	0/16, <sup>34</sup> 0/6, <sup>63</sup> 0/2, <sup>21</sup> 0/1 <sup>61</sup>	0/6, <sup>35</sup> 0/3 <sup>34</sup>	0/21, <sup>39</sup> 0/10, <sup>68</sup> 0/8, <sup>68</sup> 0/3 <sup>42</sup>
Radial scars	—	—	0/22 <sup>39</sup>
Blunt duct adenosis	—	—	0/14 <sup>39</sup>
"Breast mastosis"	—	0/3 <sup>35</sup>	—

<sup>a</sup>Shown as number of cases with activation/number of cases studied; reference is given as a superscript.

c-erbB-2, however, does favor infiltrating ductal carcinoma over infiltrating lobular carcinoma. Further studies of these issues would be useful.

#### **Correlation of c-erbB-2 Activation With Pathologic Prognostic Factors**

Multiple studies have attempted to correlate c-erbB-2 activation with various pathologic prognostic factors (Table 3). Activation of c-erbB-2 was correlated with lymph node metastasis in 8 of 28 series, with higher histological grade in 6 of 17 series, and with higher stage in 4 of 14 series. Large tumor size was not associated with c-erbB-2 activation in most studies (11 of 14). Tetraploid DNA content and low proliferation, measured by Ki-67, have been suggested as prognostic factors and may correlate with c-erbB-2 activation.<sup>6,7</sup>

#### **Correlation of c-erbB-2 Activation With Clinical Prognostic Factors**

Various studies have attempted also to correlate c-erbB-2 activation with clinical features that may predict a poor outcome (Table 4). Activation of c-erbB-2 correlated with absence of estrogen receptors in 10 of 28 series and with absence of progesterone receptors in 6 of 18 series. In most studies, patient age did not correlate with c-erbB-2 activation, and, in the rest of the reports, c-erbB-2 activation was associated with either younger or older ages.

#### **Correlation of c-erbB-2 Activation With Patient Outcome**

Slamon et al<sup>79,81</sup> first showed that amplification of the c-erbB-2 oncogene independently predicts decreased survival of patients with breast carcinoma. The correlation of c-erbB-2 amplification with poor outcome was nearly as strong as the correlation of number of involved lymph nodes with poor outcome. Slamon et al also reported that c-erbB-2 amplification is an important prognostic indicator only in patients with lymph node metastasis.<sup>79,81</sup>

A large number of subsequent studies also attempted to correlate c-erbB-2 activation with prognosis (Table 5). In 12 series, there was a correlation between c-erbB-2 activation and tumor recurrence or decreased survival. In five of these series, the predictive value of c-erbB-2 activation was reported to be independent of other prognostic factors. In contrast, 18 series did not confirm the correlation of c-erbB-2 activation with recurrence or survival. Four possible explanations for this controversy are discussed below.

One problem is that c-erbB-2 amplification correlates with prognosis mainly in patients with lymph node metastasis. As summarized in Table 5, most studies of patients with axillary lymph node metastasis showed a correlation of c-erbB-2 activation with poor outcome. In contrast, most studies of patients without axillary metastasis have not demonstrated a correlation with patient outcome. Table 6 summarizes the studies in which all patients (with and without axillary metastasis) were considered as one group. There is a trend for studies with a higher percentage of metastatic cases to show an association between c-erbB-2 activation and poor outcome. Thus, most of the current evidence suggests that c-erbB-2 activation has prognostic value only in patients with metastasis to lymph nodes.



TABLE 3. CORRELATION OF c-erbB-2 ACTIVATION WITH PATHOLOGIC PROGNOSTIC FACTORS IN BREAST CARCINOMA

Prognostic Factor	P <sup>a</sup>	c-erbB-2 DNA Amplification <sup>b</sup>	c-erbB-2 mRNA Overproduction	c-erbB-2 Protein Overproduction <sup>c</sup>
Metastasis to axillary lymph nodes	<0.05	(118) <sup>95</sup> (105) <sup>94</sup> (49) <sup>91</sup>	(104) <sup>95</sup> (82) <sup>94</sup> (9) <sup>91</sup>	(350) <sup>95</sup> (36) <sup>91</sup>
	0.05-0.15	(103) <sup>92</sup> (86) <sup>92</sup> (58) <sup>91</sup>	—	(189) <sup>92</sup>
	>0.15	(279) <sup>97</sup> (176) <sup>97</sup> (157) <sup>93</sup> (122) <sup>91</sup> (85) <sup>90</sup> (50) <sup>82</sup> (50) <sup>44</sup> (47) <sup>43</sup> (41) <sup>38</sup>	(50) <sup>90</sup>	(329) <sup>97</sup> (261) <sup>96</sup> (195) <sup>91</sup> (185) <sup>91</sup> (102) <sup>89</sup> (50) <sup>82</sup>
Larger size	<0.05	(280) <sup>97</sup>	—	(330) <sup>97</sup> (189) <sup>92</sup>
	0.05-0.15	(86) <sup>96</sup>	—	—
	>0.15	(178) <sup>97</sup> (157) <sup>93</sup> (103) <sup>90</sup> (64) <sup>97</sup> (58) <sup>91</sup> (45) <sup>91</sup>	(51) <sup>90</sup>	(350) <sup>95</sup> (185) <sup>91</sup> (34) <sup>92</sup>
Higher stage	<0.05	(300) <sup>97</sup> (64) <sup>97</sup> (58) <sup>91</sup>	—	(349) <sup>97</sup>
	0.05-0.15	(56) <sup>92</sup>	—	—
	>0.15	(176) <sup>97</sup> (157) <sup>93</sup> (84) <sup>90</sup> (61) <sup>90</sup> (53) <sup>83</sup> (52) <sup>87</sup> (41) <sup>90</sup>	(102) <sup>90</sup> (56) <sup>92</sup>	(102) <sup>90</sup> (56) <sup>92</sup>
Higher histological grade	<0.05	(47) <sup>93</sup> (16) <sup>91</sup>	(53) <sup>95</sup>	(176) <sup>91</sup> (168) <sup>91</sup> (38) <sup>93</sup>
	0.05-0.15	—	—	—
	>0.15	(122) <sup>91</sup> (113) <sup>94</sup> (95) <sup>90</sup> (58) <sup>91</sup> (50) <sup>44</sup> (41) <sup>38</sup>	(66) <sup>95</sup> (65) <sup>95</sup>	(290) <sup>96</sup> (189) <sup>92</sup> (102) <sup>90</sup>

<sup>a</sup>A correlation is statistically significant at <0.05, equivalent at best between 0.05 and 0.15, and not statistically significant at >0.15.  
<sup>b</sup>Numbers inside parentheses are the number of patients in an individual study; superscript is the reference. Some studies analyzed more than one group of patients.  
<sup>c</sup>By Western blot method; all other protein studies used immunohistochemical methods.

TABLE 4. CORRELATION OF c-erbB-2 ACTIVATION WITH CLINICAL PROGNOSTIC FACTORS IN BREAST CARCINOMA

Prognostic Factor	P <sup>a</sup>	c-erbB-2 DNA Amplification <sup>b</sup>	c-erbB-2 mRNA Overproduction	c-erbB-2 Protein Overproduction <sup>c</sup>
Absence of estrogen receptors	<0.05	(253) <sup>109</sup> (141) <sup>35</sup> (109) <sup>34</sup> (86) <sup>78</sup> (50) <sup>14</sup> (47) <sup>13</sup>	(104) <sup>35</sup>	(350) <sup>35c</sup> (330) <sup>17a</sup> (185) <sup>101</sup>
	0.05-0.15	(157) <sup>115</sup> (122) <sup>4</sup> (103) <sup>78</sup> (95) <sup>30</sup> (64) <sup>77</sup> (51) <sup>50</sup>	(180) <sup>35</sup> (62) <sup>35</sup> (62) <sup>35</sup> (57) <sup>50</sup>	(290) <sup>35</sup> (172) <sup>11</sup> (51) <sup>32c</sup> (38) <sup>13</sup>
	>0.15	(58) <sup>111</sup> (53) <sup>21</sup> (51) <sup>32</sup> (41) <sup>38</sup>		
Absence of progesterone receptors	<0.05	(253) <sup>109</sup> (141) <sup>35</sup> (109) <sup>34</sup> (50) <sup>14</sup>		(350) <sup>35c</sup> (306) <sup>17a</sup>
	0.05-0.15 >0.15	(86) <sup>78</sup> (49) <sup>32</sup> (157) <sup>115</sup> (122) <sup>4</sup> (103) <sup>78</sup> (64) <sup>77</sup>	(180) <sup>35</sup> (103) <sup>35</sup> (62) <sup>35</sup> (56) <sup>35</sup>	(90) <sup>11</sup> (49) <sup>32c</sup>
Age (menopausal status)	<0.05			(younger: 330) <sup>17a</sup> (older: 56) <sup>32c</sup>
	0.05-0.15 >0.15	(younger: 86) <sup>78</sup> (230) <sup>17</sup> (176) <sup>37</sup> (157) <sup>115</sup> (122) <sup>4</sup> (116) <sup>34</sup> (103) <sup>78</sup> (95) <sup>30</sup> (64) <sup>77</sup> (58) <sup>111</sup> (56) <sup>35</sup> (53) <sup>31</sup> (49) <sup>13</sup> (41) <sup>38</sup> (15) <sup>21</sup>	(62) <sup>35</sup>	(350) <sup>35c</sup> (290) <sup>35</sup> (189) <sup>32</sup> (182) <sup>11</sup> (45) <sup>32c</sup>

<sup>a</sup>A correlation is statistically significant at <0.05, equivocal at best between 0.05 and 0.15, and not statistically significant at >0.15  
<sup>b</sup>Numbers inside parentheses are the number of patients in an individual study; superscript is the reference. Some studies analyzed more than one group of patients.  
<sup>c</sup>By Western blot method; all other protein studies used immunohistochemical methods.

176 T.P. SINGLETON AND J.G. STRICKLER

**TABLE 5. CORRELATION OF c-erbB-2 ACTIVATION WITH OUTCOME IN PATIENTS WITH BREAST CARCINOMA**

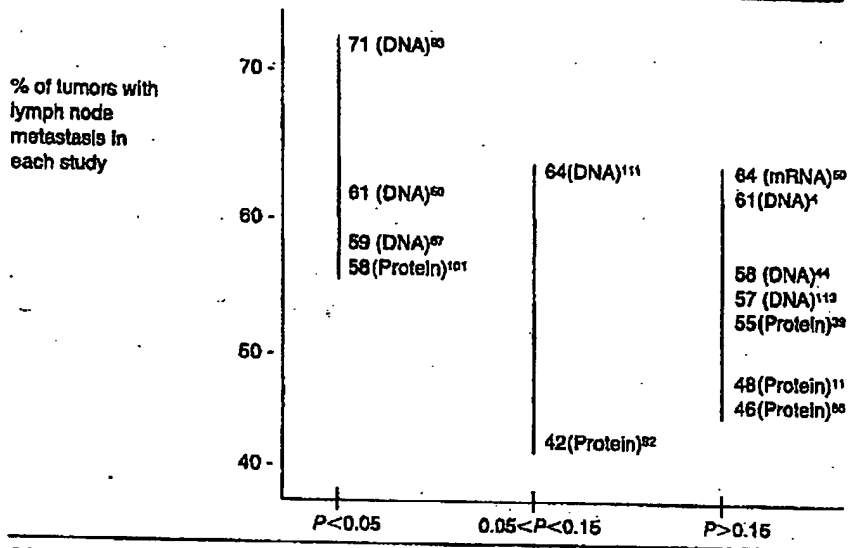
P <sup>a</sup>	Type of c-erbB-2 Activation <sup>b</sup>	Number of Patients		Statistical Analysis <sup>c</sup>	Reference	
		Total	With Metastasis to Axillary Lymph Nodes			
<0.05	DNA	176		M	87	
<0.05	DNA	61		U	60	
<0.05	DNA	57		U	65	
<0.05	DNA	41		U	89	
<0.05	mRNA	62		U	65	
<0.05	Protein	102		M	101	
<0.05	DNA		345	M	81	
<0.05	DNA		120	U	17	
<0.05	DNA		91	U	87	
<0.05	DNA		86	M	79	
<0.05	Protein-WB		350	M	85	
<0.05	Protein		62	U	101	
				44		
0.05-0.15	DNA	57		U	111	
0.05-0.15	Protein	189		M	92	
0.05-0.15	Protein		120	U	86	
>0.15	DNA	130		U	113	
>0.15	DNA	122		M	4	
>0.15	DNA	50		U	44	
>0.15	mRNA	57		U	50	
>0.15	Protein	290		M	86	
>0.15	Protein	195		U	11	
>0.15	Protein	102		U	39	
>0.15	Protein		137	U	17	
>0.15	DNA			181	M	81
>0.15	DNA			159	U	17
>0.15	DNA			73	U	87
>0.15	Protein-WB			378	U	85
>0.15	Protein-WB			182	U	17
>0.15	Protein			141	U	86
>0.15	Protein			41	U	40

<sup>a</sup>The endpoints of these studies were tumor recurrence or decreased survival or both. Correlation between c-erbB-2 activation and a poorer patient outcome is statistically significant at <0.05, is of equivocal significance at 0.05 to 0.15, and is not significant at >0.15.

<sup>b</sup>Shown as variable measured. Letters "WB" indicate assay by Western blot; the other protein studies used immunohistochemical methods.

<sup>c</sup>M = multivariate statistical analysis; U = univariate statistical analysis.

**TABLE 6. PERCENTAGE OF BREAST CARCINOMAS WITH METASTASIS COMPARED WITH PROGNOSTIC SIGNIFICANCE OF c-erbB-2 ACTIVATION**



*P* for correlation of c-erbB-2 activation with patient outcome. Each study's percentage of breast carcinomas with metastasis is compared with the correlation between c-erbB-2 activation and outcome. These data include only those studies that considered, as one group, all breast cancer patients, whether or not they had axillary metastasis. Superscripts are the references. In parentheses are the types of c-erbB-2 activation. *P* values are interpreted as in Table 3.

A second problem is that various types of breast carcinoma are grouped together in many survival studies. Because the current literature suggests that c-erbB-2 activation is infrequent in lobular carcinoma, studies that combine infiltrating ductal and lobular carcinomas may dilute the prognostic effect of c-erbB-2 activation in ductal tumors. In addition, most studies do not analyze inflammatory breast carcinoma separately. This condition frequently shows c-erbB-2 activation and has a worse prognosis than the usual mammary carcinoma, but it is an uncommon lesion.

A third potential problem is the paucity of studies that attempt to correlate c-erbB-2 activation with clinical outcome in subsets of breast carcinoma without metastasis. Two recent abstracts reported that in patients without lymph node metastasis who had various risk factors for recurrence (such as large tumor size and absence of estrogen receptors), c-erbB-2 overexpression predicted early recurrence.<sup>23,57</sup> In patients with ductal carcinoma in situ, one small study found no association between tumor recurrence and c-erbB-2 activation.<sup>40</sup>

A fourth problem is the lack of data regarding whether the prognosis correlates better with c-erbB-2 DNA amplification or with mRNA or protein overproduction. Most studies that find a correlation between c-erbB-2 activa-

tion and poor patient outcome measure *c-erbB-2* DNA amplification (Table 5), and breast carcinoma patients with greater amplification of *c-erbB-2* may have poorer survival.<sup>79,81</sup> Recent studies suggest that amplification has more prognostic power than overproduction,<sup>17,34,35</sup> but the clinical significance of *c-erbB-2* overproduction without DNA amplification deserves further research.<sup>17,53</sup> Few studies have attempted to correlate patient outcome with *c-erbB-2* mRNA overproduction, and many studies of *c-erbB-2* protein overproduction use relatively less reliable methods such as immunohistochemical studies with polyclonal antibodies.

### Comparison of *c-erbB-2* Activation With Other Oncogenes in Breast Carcinoma

Other oncogenes that may have prognostic implications in human breast cancer are reviewed elsewhere.<sup>71,106</sup> This section will be restricted to a comparison between the clinical relevance of *c-erbB-2* and these other oncogenes.

The *c-myc* gene is often activated in breast carcinomas, but *c-myc* activation generally has less prognostic importance than *c-erbB-2* activation.<sup>21,34,77,87,93</sup> One study found a correlation between increased mRNAs of *c-erbB-2* and *c-myc*, although other reports have not confirmed this.<sup>34,106</sup> Subsequent research, however, could demonstrate a subset of breast carcinomas in which *c-myc* has more prognostic importance than *c-erbB-2*.

The gene *c-erbB-1* for the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) is homologous with *c-erbB-2* but is infrequently amplified in breast carcinomas.<sup>79</sup> Overproduction of EGFR, however, occurs more frequently than amplification and may correlate with a poor prognosis. In studies that have examined both *c-erbB-2* and EGFR in the same tumor, *c-erbB-2* has a stronger correlation with poor prognostic factors.<sup>35,52</sup> Studies have tended to show no correlation between amplification of *c-erbB-2* and *c-erbB-1* or overproduction of *c-erbB-2* and EGFR, although at the molecular level EGFR mediates phosphorylation of *c-erbB-2* protein.<sup>51,52,61,69,109</sup> Recent reviews describe EGFR in breast carcinoma.<sup>43,100</sup>

The genes *c-erbA* and *ear-1* are homologous to the thyroid hormone receptor, and they are located adjacent to *c-erbB-2* on chromosome 17. These genes are frequently coamplified with *c-erbB-2* in breast carcinomas. The absence of *c-erbA* expression in breast carcinomas, however, is evidence against an important role for this gene in breast neoplasia.<sup>90</sup> Amplification of *c-erbB-2* can occur without *ear-1* amplification, and these tumors have a decreased survival that is similar to tumors with both *c-erbB-2* and *ear-1* amplification.<sup>87</sup> Consequently, *c-erbB-2* amplification seems to be more important than amplification of *c-erbA* or *ear-1*.

Other genes also have been compared with *c-erbB-2* activation in breast carcinomas. One study found a significant correlation between increased *c-erbB-2* mRNA and increased mRNAs of *fos*, platelet-derived growth factor chain A, and *Ki-ras*.<sup>106</sup> Allelic deletion of *c-Ha-ras* may indicate a poorer prognosis in breast carcinoma,<sup>21</sup> but it has not been compared with *c-erbB-2* activation. Some studies have suggested a correlation between advanced stage or recurrence of breast carcinoma and activation of any one of several oncogenes.<sup>21,113</sup>

## ACTIVATION OF c-erbB-2 IN NON-MAMMARY TISSUES

## Incidence of c-erbB-2 Activation in Non-Mammary Tissues

Table 7 summarizes the normal tissues in which c-erbB-2 expression has been detected, usually with immunohistochemical methods using polyclonal anti-

TABLE 7. PRESENCE OR ABSENCE OF c-erbB-2 mRNA OR c-erbB-2 PROTEIN IN NORMAL HUMAN TISSUES

Tissues With c-erbB-2 mRNA	Tissues Producing c-erbB-2 Protein <sup>a</sup>	Tissues Lacking c-erbB-2 mRNA	Tissues Lacking c-erbB-2 Protein
Skin <sup>24</sup>	Epidermis <sup>55</sup> External root sheath <sup>56</sup> Eccrine sweat gland <sup>54</sup> Fetal oral mucosa <sup>52</sup> Fetal esophagus <sup>52</sup>		Postnatal oral mucosa <sup>52</sup> Postnatal esophagus <sup>52</sup>
Stomach <sup>24</sup>	Stomach <sup>22,52</sup> Fetal intestine <sup>52a</sup>		
Jejunum <sup>24</sup>	Small intestine <sup>22,52</sup>		
Colon <sup>24</sup>	Colon <sup>22,52</sup>		
Kidney <sup>24</sup>	Fetal kidney <sup>52a</sup>  Fetal proximal tubule <sup>52</sup> Distal tubule <sup>52</sup> Fetal collecting duct <sup>52</sup> Fetal renal pelvis <sup>52</sup> Fetal ureter <sup>52</sup>	Kidneys <sup>104</sup>	Glomerulus <sup>52</sup> Postnatal Bowman's capsule <sup>52</sup> Postnatal proximal tubule <sup>52</sup>  Postnatal collecting duct <sup>52</sup> Postnatal renal pelvis <sup>52</sup> Postnatal fetal ureter <sup>52</sup> Liver <sup>52,55</sup>
Liver <sup>24</sup>	Hepatocytes <sup>22</sup> Pancreatic acini <sup>22</sup> Pancreatic ducts <sup>22,52</sup> Endocrine cells of islets of Langerhans <sup>22</sup>		Pancreatic islets <sup>52</sup>
Lung <sup>24</sup>	Fetal trachea <sup>52</sup> Fetal bronchioles <sup>52</sup> Bronchioles <sup>52</sup>		Postnatal trachea <sup>52</sup> Postnatal bronchioles <sup>52</sup>  Postnatal alveoli <sup>52,56</sup> Postnatal brain <sup>52</sup> Postnatal ganglion cells <sup>52</sup>
Fetal brain <sup>24</sup>	Fetal ganglion cells <sup>52</sup>		
Thyroid <sup>1</sup>			
Uterus <sup>24</sup>	Ovary <sup>12</sup> Blood vessels <sup>42</sup>		Endothelium <sup>52</sup>
Placenta <sup>24</sup>			Adrenocortical cells <sup>52</sup> Postnatal thymus <sup>52</sup> Fibroblasts <sup>52</sup> Smooth muscle cells <sup>52</sup> Cardiac muscle cells <sup>52</sup>

<sup>a</sup>This protein study used Western blots; the rest used immunohistochemical methods.

180 T.P. SINGLETON AND J.G. STRICKLER

bodies. Only a few studies have been performed, and some of these do not demonstrate convincing cell membrane reactivity in the published photographs. The interpretations in these studies, however, are listed, with the caveat that these findings should be confirmed by immunoprecipitation or Western or RNA blots. Production of *c-erbB-2* has been identified in normal epithelium of the gastrointestinal tract and skin. Discrepancies regarding *c-erbB-2* protein in other tissues could be due, at least in part, to differences in techniques.

The data on *c-erbB-2* activation in various non-mammary neoplasms should be interpreted with caution, because only small numbers of tumors have been studied, usually by immunohistochemical methods using polyclonal antibodies. Studies using cell lines have been excluded, because cell culture can induce amplification and overexpression of other genes, although this has not been documented for *c-erbB-2*.

Activation of *c-erbB-2* has been identified in 32 percent (64 of 203) of ovarian carcinomas in eight studies (Table 8). One abstract<sup>45</sup> stated that ovarian carcinomas contained significantly more *c-erbB-2* protein than ovarian non-epithelial malignancies. Another report<sup>61</sup> showed that 12 percent of ovarian carcinomas had *c-erbB-2* overproduction without amplification.

Activation of *c-erbB-2* has been identified in 20 percent (40 of 198) of gastric adenocarcinomas in seven studies, including 33 percent (21 of 64) of

TABLE 8. *c-erbB-2* ACTIVATION IN HUMAN GYNECOLOGIC TUMORS\*

Tumor Type	<i>c-erbB-2</i> DNA Amplification	<i>c-erbB-2</i> mRNA Over-production	<i>c-erbB-2</i> Protein Over-production
Ovary—carcinoma, not otherwise specified	31/120, <sup>81</sup> 1/11, <sup>57</sup> 0/6, <sup>107</sup> 0/6, <sup>84</sup> 0/3, <sup>112</sup> 0/2, <sup>72</sup> 0/1 <sup>110</sup>	23/67 <sup>61</sup>	23/73, <sup>12</sup> 36/72 <sup>61</sup>
Ovary—serous (papillary) carcinoma	2/7, <sup>110</sup> 1/7, <sup>112</sup> 0/6 <sup>72</sup>	—	—
Ovary—endometrioid carcinoma	0/3 <sup>110</sup>	—	—
Ovary—mucinous carcinoma	1/2, <sup>110</sup> 0/1 <sup>72</sup>	—	—
Ovary—clear cell carcinoma	0/2, <sup>112</sup> 0/1 <sup>72</sup>	—	—
Ovary—mixed epithelial carcinoma	0/2 <sup>72</sup>	—	—
Ovary—endometrioid borderline tumor	0/1 <sup>72</sup>	—	—
Ovary—mucinous borderline tumor	0/3 <sup>72</sup>	—	—
Ovary—serous cystadenoma	0/4 <sup>72</sup>	—	—
Ovary—mucinous cystadenoma	0/2 <sup>72</sup>	—	—
Ovary—sclerosing stromal tumor	0/1 <sup>72</sup>	—	—
Ovary—fibrothecoma	0/1 <sup>72</sup>	—	—
Uterus—endometrial adenocarcinoma	0/4, <sup>84</sup> 0/1 <sup>110</sup>	—	—

\*Shown as number of cases with amplification (or overproduction)/total number of cases studied; reference is given as superscript. All protein studies used immunohistochemical methods.

intestinal or tubular subtypes and 9 percent (4 of 47) of diffuse or signet ring cell subtypes (Table 9). Activation of c-erbB-2 has been detected in 2 percent (6 of 281) of colorectal carcinomas, although an additional immunohistochemical study detected c-erbB-2 protein in seven of eight tissues fixed in Bouin's solution. One study found greater immunohistochemical reactivity for c-erbB-2 protein in colonic adenomatous polyps than in the adjacent normal epithelium, using Bouin's fixative. Lesions with anaplastic features and progression to invasive carcinoma tended to show decreased immunohistochemical reactivity for c-erbB-2 protein.<sup>22</sup> Hepatocellular carcinomas (12 of 14 cases) and cholangiocarcinomas (46 of 63 cases) reacted with antibodies against c-erbB-2 in one study, but some of these "positive" cases showed only diffuse cytoplasmic staining, which

TABLE 9. c-erbB-2 ACTIVATION IN HUMAN GASTROINTESTINAL TUMORS\*

Tumor Type	c-erbB-2 DNA Amplification	c-erbB-2 Protein Overproduction
Esophagus—squamous cell carcinoma	0/1 <sup>107</sup>	0/1 <sup>81</sup>
Stomach—carcinoma, poorly differentiated	0/22 <sup>108</sup>	—
Stomach—adenocarcinoma	2/24, <sup>84</sup> 2/9, <sup>107</sup> 2/8, <sup>111</sup> 2/8, <sup>87</sup> 0/1 <sup>108</sup>	4/27, <sup>23</sup> 3/10 <sup>81</sup>
Stomach—carcinoma, intestinal or tubular type	5/10 <sup>108</sup>	16/54 <sup>20</sup>
Stomach—carcinoma, diffuse or signet ring cell type	0/2 <sup>108</sup>	4/45 <sup>20</sup>
Colorectum—carcinoma	2/49, <sup>84</sup> 1/45, <sup>111</sup> 1/45, <sup>87</sup> 1/45, <sup>80</sup> 0/40, <sup>81</sup> 0/32, <sup>107</sup> 0/3 <sup>82</sup>	1/22, <sup>58</sup> 7/8 <sup>22b</sup>
Colon—villous adenoma	0/1 <sup>80</sup>	—
Colon—tubulovillous adenoma	0/5 <sup>80</sup>	—
Colon—tubular adenoma	0/7 <sup>80</sup>	19/19 <sup>22b</sup>
Colon—hyperplastic polyp	0/1 <sup>80</sup>	—
Intestine—leiomyosarcoma	—	0/1 <sup>81</sup>
Hepatocellular carcinoma	0/12 <sup>111</sup>	12/14, <sup>85</sup> 0/2 <sup>81</sup>
Hepatoblastoma	0/1 <sup>87</sup>	—
Cholangiocarcinoma	—	46/63 <sup>85</sup>
Pancreas—adenocarcinoma	—	2/80, <sup>41c</sup> 0/2 <sup>81</sup>
Pancreas—acinar carcinoma	—	0/1 <sup>81</sup>
Pancreas—clear cell carcinoma	—	0/2 <sup>81</sup>
Pancreas—large cell carcinoma	—	0/3 <sup>81</sup>
Pancreas—signet ring carcinoma	—	0/1 <sup>81</sup>
Pancreas—chronic inflammation	—	0/14 <sup>41c</sup>

\*Shown as number of cases with amplification (or overproduction)/total number of cases studied; reference is given as superscript. All protein studies used immunohistochemical methods. No studies analyzed for c-erbB-2 mRNA.

<sup>b</sup>Tissues fixed in Bouin's solution.

<sup>c</sup>Only cases with distinct membrane staining are interpreted as showing c-erbB-2 overproduction.



162 T.P. SINGLETON AND J.G. STRICKLER

TABLE 10. *c-erbB-2* ACTIVATION IN HUMAN PULMONARY TUMORS<sup>a</sup>

Tumor Type	<i>c-erbB-2</i> DNA Amplification	<i>c-erbB-2</i> Protein Overproduction
Non-small cell carcinoma	2/60, <sup>75</sup> 0/60 <sup>81</sup>	1/84 <sup>89</sup>
Epidermoid carcinoma	0/13, <sup>82</sup> 0/10, <sup>87</sup> 0/6 <sup>90</sup>	3/5 <sup>90</sup>
Adenocarcinoma	0/21, <sup>82</sup> 1/13, <sup>89</sup> 0/7, <sup>111</sup> 0/7, <sup>87</sup> 0/3 <sup>107</sup>	4/12 <sup>90</sup>
Large cell carcinoma	0/9, <sup>82</sup> 0/6 <sup>90</sup>	—
Small cell carcinoma	—	0/26, <sup>88</sup> 0/3 <sup>99</sup>
Carcinoid tumor	0/1 <sup>82</sup>	0/3 <sup>99</sup>

<sup>a</sup>Shown as number of cases with amplification (or overproduction)/total number of cases studied; reference is given as superscript. All protein studies used immunohistochemical methods. No studies analyzed for *c-erbB-2* mRNA.

does not indicate *c-erbB-2* activation in breast neoplasms.<sup>85</sup> Also, some pancreatic carcinomas and chronic pancreatitis tissue had cytoplasmic immunohistochemical reactivity for *c-erbB-2* protein, in addition to the rare case of pancreatic adenocarcinoma with distinct cell membrane staining.<sup>41</sup>

Tables 10 through 14 summarize the studies of *c-erbB-2* activation in other neoplasms. The *c-erbB-2* oncogene is not activated in most of these tumors. Activation of *c-erbB-2* has been detected in 1 percent (4 of 299) of pulmonary non-small cell carcinomas in nine studies, although one additional report<sup>89</sup> found *c-erbB-2* protein overproduction in 41 percent (7 of 17). Renal cell carcinoma had *c-erbB-2* activation in 7 percent (2 of 30) in four studies. Overproduction of *c-erbB-2* protein was described in one transitional cell carcinoma of the urinary bladder, a grade 2 papillary lesion.<sup>88</sup> Squamous cell carcinoma and basal cell carcinoma of the skin may contain *c-erbB-2* protein, but it is not clear

TABLE 11. *c-erbB-2* ACTIVATION IN HUMAN HEMATOLOGIC PROLIFERATIONS<sup>a</sup>

Tumor Type	<i>c-erbB-2</i> DNA Amplification	<i>c-erbB-2</i> mRNA Overproduction	<i>c-erbB-2</i> Protein Overproduction
Hematologic malignancies	0/23 <sup>119</sup>	—	—
Malignant lymphoma	0/9, <sup>87</sup> 0/3 <sup>107</sup>	0/1 <sup>1</sup>	0/15 <sup>91</sup>
Acute leukemia	0/14 <sup>87</sup>	—	—
Acute lymphoblastic leukemia	0/1 <sup>107</sup>	—	—
Acute myeloblastic leukemia	0/3 <sup>107</sup>	—	—
Chronic leukemia	0/19 <sup>87</sup>	—	—
Chronic lymphocytic leukemia	0/8 <sup>107</sup>	—	—
Chronic myelogenous leukemia	0/8 <sup>107</sup>	—	—
Myeloproliferative disorder	0/1 <sup>87</sup>	—	—

<sup>a</sup>Shown as number of cases with amplification (or overproduction)/total number of cases studied; reference is given as superscript. All protein studies used immunohistochemical methods.

TABLE 12. c-erbB-2 ACTIVATION IN HUMAN TUMORS OF SOFT TISSUE AND BONE\*

Tumor Type	c-erbB-2 DNA Amplification
Sarcoma	0/10, <sup>111</sup> 0/8 <sup>67</sup>
Malignant fibrous histiocytoma	0/1 <sup>107</sup>
Liposarcoma	0/3 <sup>107</sup>
Pleomorphic sarcoma	0/1 <sup>107</sup>
Rhabdomyosarcoma	0/1 <sup>107</sup>
Osteogenic sarcoma	0/2, <sup>107</sup> 0/2 <sup>57</sup>
Chondrosarcoma	0/1 <sup>107</sup>
Ewing's sarcoma	0/1 <sup>57</sup>
Schwannoma	0/1 <sup>57</sup>

\*Shown as number of cases with amplification (or overproduction)/total number of cases studied; reference is given as superscript. No studies analyzed for c-erbB-2 mRNA or c-erbB-2 protein.

whether the protein level is increased over that of normal skin.<sup>56</sup> Thyroid carcinomas and adenomas can have low levels of increased c-erbB-2 mRNA. One abstract described low-level c-erbB-2 DNA amplification in one of ten salivary gland pleomorphic adenomas.<sup>48</sup>

#### Correlation of c-erbB-2 Activation With Patient Outcome

Very few studies have attempted to correlate c-erbB-2 activation in non-mammary tumors with outcome. Slamon et al<sup>81</sup> showed that c-erbB-2 amplification or overexpression in ovarian carcinomas correlates with decreased survival, especially when marked activation is present. However, they did not report the stage, histological grade, or histological subtype of these neoplasms. Another study of stages III and IV ovarian carcinomas found a correlation between decreased survival and c-erbB-2 protein overproduction, but not between survival and histological grade.<sup>18</sup> One abstract stated that c-erbB-2 protein overproduction in 10 of 16 pulmonary adenocarcinomas correlated with decreased disease-free interval.<sup>70</sup> Another abstract described a tendency for immunohisto-

TABLE 13. c-erbB-2 ACTIVATION IN HUMAN TUMORS OF THE URINARY TRACT\*

Tumor Type	c-erbB-2 DNA Amplification	c-erbB-2 mRNA Overproduction	c-erbB-2 Protein Overproduction
Kidney—renal cell carcinoma	1/5, <sup>57</sup> 1/4, <sup>107</sup> 0/5 <sup>54</sup>	0/16 <sup>104</sup>	—
Wilms' tumor	0/4 <sup>57</sup>	—	—
Prostate—adenocarcinoma	—	—	0/23 <sup>53</sup>
Urinary bladder—carcinoma	—	—	1/48 <sup>53</sup>

\*Shown as number of cases with amplification (or overproduction)/total number of cases studied; reference is given as superscript. All protein studies used immunohistochemical methods.

184 T.P. SINGLETON AND J.G. STRICKLER

TABLE 14. *c-erbB-2* ACTIVATION IN MISCELLANEOUS HUMAN TUMORS\*

Tumor Type	<i>c-erbB-2</i> DNA Amplification	<i>c-erbB-2</i> mRNA Overproduction	<i>c-erbB-2</i> Protein Over- production
Skin—malignant melanoma	—	—	0/10 <sup>88</sup>
Skin, head and neck—squamous cell carcinoma	0/7 <sup>107</sup>	—	—
Site not stated—squamous cell carcinoma	0/8, <sup>97</sup> 0/2 <sup>76</sup>	—	—
Salivary gland—adenocarcinoma	1/1 <sup>76</sup>	—	—
Parotid gland—adenoid cystic carcinoma	—	—	0/1 <sup>81</sup>
Thyroid—anaplastic carcinoma	0/1 <sup>1</sup>	0/1 <sup>1</sup>	—
Thyroid—papillary carcinoma	0/5 <sup>1</sup>	3(low levels)/5 <sup>1</sup>	—
Thyroid—adenocarcinoma	0/1 <sup>84</sup>	—	—
Thyroid—adenoma	0/2 <sup>1</sup>	1(low levels)/2 <sup>1</sup>	—
Neuroblastoma	0/35, <sup>91</sup> 0/9, <sup>97</sup> 0/1 <sup>76</sup>	—	—
Meningioma	0/2 <sup>97</sup>	—	—

\*Shown as number of cases with amplification (or overproduction)/total number of cases studied; reference is given as superscript. All protein studies used immunohistochemical methods.

chemical reactivity for *c-erbB-2* protein to correlate with higher grades of prostatic adenocarcinoma.<sup>97</sup> Additional prognostic studies of ovarian carcinomas and other neoplasms are needed.

## SUMMARY

Activation of the *c-erbB-2* oncogene can occur by amplification of *c-erbB-2* DNA and by overproduction of *c-erbB-2* mRNA and *c-erbB-2* protein. Approximately 20 percent of breast carcinomas show evidence of *c-erbB-2* activation, which correlates with a poor prognosis primarily in patients with metastasis to axillary lymph nodes. Studies that have attempted to correlate *c-erbB-2* activation with other prognostic factors in breast carcinoma have reported conflicting conclusions. The pathologic and clinical significance of *c-erbB-2* activation in other neoplasms is unclear and should be assessed by additional studies.

## REFERENCES

1. Aasland R, Lillehaug JR, Male R, et al. Expression of oncogenes in thyroid tumors: Coexpression of *c-erbB2/neu* and *c-erbB*. *Br J Cancer*. 57:358, 1988
2. Akiyama T, Sudo C, Ogawara H, et al. The product of the human *c-erbB-2* gene: A 185-kilodalton glycoprotein with tyrosine kinase activity. *Science*. 232:1644, 1986

3. Ali IU, Lidereau R, Theillet C, Callahan R. Reduction to homozygosity of genes on chromosome 11 in human breast neoplasia. *Science*. 238:185, 1987
4. Ali IU, Campbell G, Lidereau R, Callahan R. Amplification of c-erbB-2 and aggressive human breast tumors. *Science*. 240:1795, 1988
5. Ali IU, Campbell G, Lidereau R, Callahan R. Lack of evidence for the prognostic significance of c-erbB-2 amplification in human breast carcinoma. *Oncogene Res*. 3:139, 1988
6. Bacus SS, Bacus JW, Slamon DJ, Press MF. HER-2/neu oncogene expression and DNA ploidy analysis in breast cancer. *Arch Pathol Lab Med*. 114:164, 1990
7. Bacus SS, Ruby SG, Weinberg DS, et al. HER-2/neu oncogene expression and proliferation in breast cancers. *Am J Pathol*. 137:103, 1990
8. Bargmann CI, Hung MC, Weinberg RA. The neu oncogene encodes an epidermal growth factor receptor-related protein. *Nature*. 319:226, 1986
9. Bargmann CI, Hung MC, Weinberg RA. Multiple independent activations of the neu oncogene by a point mutation altering the transmembrane domain of p185. *Cell*. 45:649, 1986
10. Bargmann CI, Weinberg RA. Oncogenic activation of the neu-encoded receptor protein by point mutation and deletion. *EMBO J*. 7:2043, 1988
11. Barnes DM, Lammie GA, Millis RR, et al. An immunohistochemical evaluation of c-erbB-2 expression in human breast carcinoma. *Br J Cancer*. 58:448, 1988
12. Berchuck A, Kamel A, Whitaker R, et al. Overexpression of HER-2/neu is associated with poor survival in advanced epithelial ovarian cancer. *Cancer Res*. 50:4087, 1990
13. Berger MS, Locher GW, Saurer S, et al. Correlation of c-erbB-2 gene amplification and protein expression in human breast carcinoma with nodal status and nuclear grading. *Cancer Res*. 48:1238, 1988
14. Bernards R, Destree A, McKenzie S, et al. Effective tumor immunotherapy directed against an oncogene-encoded product using a vaccinia virus vector. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 84:6854, 1987
15. Biunno I, Pozzi MR, Pierotti MA, et al. Structure and expression of oncogenes in surgical specimens of human breast carcinomas. *Br J Cancer*. 57:464, 1988
16. Borg A, Linell F, Idvall I, et al. Her2/neu amplification and comedo type breast carcinoma. *Lancet*. 1:1268, 1989
17. Borg A, Tandon AK, Sigurdsson H, et al. HER-2/neu amplification predicts poor survival in node-positive breast cancer. *Cancer Res*. 50:4332, 1990
18. Bouchard L, Lamarre L, Tremblay PJ, Jolicoeur P. Stochastic appearance of mammary tumors in transgenic mice carrying the MMTV/c-neu oncogene. *Cell*. 57:931, 1989
19. Carney WP, Retos C, Petit D, et al. Quantitation of the neu oncogene protein using a monoclonal antibody based immunoassay (abstract). *Mod Pathol*. 3:15A, 1990
20. Cline MJ, Battifora H. Abnormalities of protooncogenes in non-small cell lung cancer: Correlations with tumor type and clinical characteristics. *Cancer*. 60:2669, 1987
21. Cline MJ, Battifora H, Yokota J. Proto-oncogene abnormalities in human breast cancer: Correlations with anatomic features and clinical course of disease. *J Clin Oncol*. 5:999, 1987
22. Cohen JA, Weiner DB, More KF, et al. Expression pattern of the neu (NGL) gene-encoded growth factor receptor protein (p185<sup>neu</sup>) in normal and transformed epithelial tissues of the digestive tract. *Oncogene*. 4:81, 1989
23. Colnaghi MI, Miotti S, Andreola S, et al. New prognostic factors in breast cancer (abstract). *Am Assoc Cancer Res Ann Meeting*. 30:230A, 1989

186 T.P. SINGLETON AND J.G. STRICKLER

24. Coussens L, Yang-Feng TL, Liao YC, et al. Tyrosine kinase receptor with extensive homology to EGF receptor shares chromosomal location with *neu* oncogene. *Science*. 230:1132, 1985
25. Di Fiore PP, Pierce JH, Kraus MH, et al. *erbB-2* is a potent oncogene when overexpressed in NIH/3T3 cells. *Science*. 237:178, 1987
26. Drebin JA, Link VC, Weinberg RA, Greene MI. Inhibition of tumor growth by a monoclonal antibody reactive with an oncogene-encoded tumor antigen. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 83:9129, 1986
27. Drebin JA, Link VC, Greene MI. Monoclonal antibodies reactive with distinct domains of the *neu* oncogene-encoded p185 molecule exert synergistic anti-tumor effects in vivo. *Oncogene*. 2:273, 1988
28. Drebin JA, Link VC, Greene MI. Monoclonal antibodies specific for the *neu* oncogene product directly mediate anti-tumor effects in vivo. *Oncogene*. 2:387, 1988
29. Falck VG, Gullick WJ. *c-erbB-2* oncogene product staining in gastric adenocarcinoma. An immunohistochemical study. *J Pathol*. 159:107, 1989
30. Fendly BM, Winget M, Hudziak RM, et al. Characterization of murine monoclonal antibodies reactive to either the human epidermal growth factor receptor or *HER2/neu* gene product. *Cancer Res*. 50:1550, 1990
31. Fontaine J, Tesseraux M, Klein V, et al. Gene amplification and expression of the *neu* (*c-erbB-2*) sequence in human mammary carcinoma. *Oncology*. 45:360, 1988
32. Frye RA, Benz CC, Liu E. Detection of amplified oncogenes by differential polymerase chain reaction. *Oncogene*. 4:1153, 1989
33. Fukushige SI, Matsubara KI, Yoshida M, et al. Localization of a novel *v-erbB*-related gene, *c-erbB-2*, on human chromosome 17 and its amplification in a gastric cancer cell line. *Mol Cell Biol*. 6:955, 1986
34. Guerin M, Barrois M, Terrier MJ, et al. Overexpression of either *c-myc* or *c-erbB-2/neu* proto-oncogenes in human breast carcinomas: Correlation with poor prognosis. *Oncogene Res*. 3:21, 1988
35. Guerin M, Gabillot M, Mathieu MC, et al. Structure and expression of *c-erbB-2* and EGF receptor genes in inflammatory and non-inflammatory breast cancer: Prognostic significance. *Int J Cancer*. 43:201, 1989
36. Gullick WJ, Berger MS, Bennett PLP, et al. Expression of the *c-erbB-2* protein in normal and transformed cells. *Int J Cancer*. 40:246, 1987
37. Gullick WJ, Venter DJ. The *c-erbB2* gene and its expression in human cancers. In: Waxman J, Sikora K, eds. *The Molecular Biology of Cancer*. Boston, Blackwell Sci Publ; 1989: 38-53
38. Gullick WJ. Expression of the *c-erbB-2* proto-oncogene protein in human breast cancer. *Recent Results Cancer Res*. 113:51, 1989
39. Gusterson BA, Machin LG, Gullick WJ, et al. *c-erbB-2* expression in benign and malignant breast disease. *Br J Cancer*. 58:453, 1988
40. Gusterson BA, Machin LG, Gullick WJ, et al. Immunohistochemical distribution of *c-erbB-2* in infiltrating and in situ breast cancer. *Int J Cancer*. 42:842, 1988
41. Hall PA, Hughes CM, Staddon SL, et al. The *c-erbB-2* proto-oncogene in human pancreatic cancer. *J Pathol*. 161:195, 1990
42. Hanna W, Kahn HJ, Andrusis I, Pawson T. Distribution and patterns of staining of *neu* oncogene product in benign and malignant breast diseases. *Mod Pathol*. 3:455, 1990
43. Harris AL, Nicholson S. Epidermal growth factor receptors in human breast cancer.

- In: Lippman ME, Dickson RB, eds. *Breast Cancer: Cellular and Molecular Biology*. Boston, Kluwer Academic Publ; 1988: 93-118
44. Heintz NH, Leslie KO, Rogers LA, Howard PL. Amplification of the c-erbB-2 oncogene and prognosis of breast adenocarcinoma. *Arch Pathol Lab Med.* 114:160, 1990
  45. Huettnner P, Carney W, Delellis R, et al. Quantification of the neu oncogene product in ovarian neoplasms (abstract). *Mod Pathol.* 3:46A, 1990
  46. Hung MC, Yan DH, Zhao X. Amplification of the proto-neu oncogene facilitates oncogenic activation by a single point mutation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* 86:2545, 1989
  47. Hynes NE, Gerber HA, Saurer S, Groner B. Overexpression of the c-erbB-2 protein in human breast tumor cell lines. *J Cell Biochem.* 39:167, 1989
  48. Kahn HJ, Hanna W, Auger M, Andreulis I. Expression and amplification of neu oncogene in pleomorphic adenoma of salivary glands (abstract). *Mod Pathol.* 3:50A, 1990
  49. King CR, Kraus MH, Aaronson SA. Amplification of a novel v-erbB-related gene in a human mammary carcinoma. *Science.* 229:974, 1985
  50. King CR, Swain SM, Porter L, et al. Heterogeneous expression of erbB-2 messenger RNA in human breast cancer. *Cancer Res.* 49:4185, 1989
  51. Kokai Y, Dobashi K, Weiner DB, et al. Phosphorylation process induced by epidermal growth factor receptor alters the oncogenic and cellular neu (NCL) gene products. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* 85:5389, 1988
  52. Lacroix H, Iglehart JD, Skinner MA, Kraus MH. Overexpression of erbB-2 or EGF receptor proteins present in early stage mammary carcinoma is detected simultaneously in matched primary tumors and regional metastases. *Oncogene.* 4:145, 1989
  53. Lemoine NR, Staddon S, Dickson C, et al. Absence of activating transmembrane mutations in the c-erbB-2 proto-oncogene in human breast cancer. *Oncogene.* 5:237, 1990
  54. Lodato RF, Maguire HC, Greene MJ, et al. Immunohistochemical evaluation of c-erbB-2 oncogene expression in ductal carcinoma in situ and atypical ductal hyperplasia of the breast. *Mod Pathol.* 3:449, 1990
  55. Maguire HC, Greene MI. The neu (c-erbB-2) oncogene. *Semin Oncol.* 16:148, 1989
  56. Maguire HC, Jaworsky C, Cohen JA, et al. Distribution of neu (c-erbB-2) protein in human skin. *J Invest Dermatol.* 89:786, 1989
  57. Masuda H, Battifora H, Yokota J, et al. Specificity of proto-oncogene amplification in human malignant diseases. *Mol Biol Med.* 4:213, 1987
  58. McCann A, Dervan PA, Johnston PA, et al. c-erbB-2 oncoprotein expression in primary human tumors. *Cancer.* 65:88, 1990
  59. McKenzie SJ, Marks PJ, Lam T, et al. Generation and characterization of monoclonal antibodies specific for the human neu oncogene product, p185. *Oncogene.* 4:543, 1989
  60. Meltzer SJ, Ahnen DJ, Battifora H, et al. Protooncogene abnormalities in colon cancers and adenomatous polyps. *Gastroenterology.* 92:1174, 1987
  61. Mori S, Akiyama T, Morishita Y, et al. Light and electron microscopical demonstration of c-erbB-2 gene product-like immunoreactivity in human malignant tumors. *Virchows Arch [B].* 54:8, 1987
  62. Mori S, Akiyama T, Yamada Y, et al. C-erbB-2 gene product, a membrane protein commonly expressed in human fetal epithelial cells. *Lab Invest.* 61:93, 1989
  63. Muller WJ, Sinn E, Pattengale PK, et al. Single-step induction of mammary

- adenocarcinoma in transgenic mice bearing the activated *c-neu* oncogene. *Cell*. 54:105, 1988
64. Ong G, Gullick W, Sikora K. Oncoprotein stability after tumor resection. *Br J Cancer*. 61:538, 1990
  65. Parks HC, Lillycrop K, Howell A, Craig RK. *C-erbB2* mRNA expression in human breast tumors: Comparison with *c-erbB2* DNA amplification and correlation with prognosis. *Br J Cancer*. 61:39, 1990
  66. Popescu NC, King CR, Kraus MH. Localization of the *erbB-2* gene on normal and rearranged chromosomes 17 to bands q12-21.32. *Genomics*. 4:362, 1989
  67. Press MF, Pike MC, Paterson MC, et al. Overexpression of *HER-2/neu* proto-oncogene in node negative breast cancer: Correlation with increased risk of early recurrent disease (abstract). *Mod Pathol*. 3:80A, 1990
  68. Ramachandra S, Machin L, Ashley S, et al. Immunohistochemical distribution of *c-erbB-2* in in situ breast carcinoma: A detailed morphological analysis. *J Pathol*. 161:7, 1990
  69. Rio MC, Bellocq JP, Cairard B, et al. Specific expression of the *pS2* gene in subclasses of breast cancers in comparison with expression of the estrogen and progesterone receptors and the oncogene *ERBB2*. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 84:9243, 1987
  70. Robinson R, Kern J, Weiner D, et al. *p185<sup>neu</sup>* expression in human lung non-small cell carcinomas: An immunohistochemical study with clinicopathologic correlation (abstract). *Mod Pathol*. 3:85A, 1990
  71. Rochlitz CF, Benz CC. Oncogenes in human solid tumors. In: Benz C, Liu E, eds. *Oncogenes*. Boston, Kluwer Academic Publ; 1989: 199-240
  72. Sasano H, Garret CT, Wilkinson DS, et al. Protooncogene amplification and tumor ploidy in human ovarian neoplasms. *Hum Pathol*. 21:382, 1990
  73. Schechter AL, Stern DF, Vaidyanathan L, et al. The *neu* oncogene: An *erbB*-related gene encoding a 185,000-M<sub>r</sub> tumor antigen. *Nature*. 312:513, 1984
  74. Schechter AL, Hung MC, Vaidyanathan L, et al. The *neu* gene: An *erbB*-homologous gene distinct from and unlinked to the gene encoding the EGF receptor. *Science*. 229:976, 1985
  75. Schneider PM, Hung MC, Chiocca SM, et al. Differential expression of the *c-erbB-2* gene in human small cell and non-small cell lung cancer. *Cancer Res*. 49:4968, 1989
  76. Semba K, Kamata N, Toyoshima K, Yamamoto T. A *v-erbB*-related protooncogene, *c-erbB-2*, is distinct from the *c-erbB-1*/epidermal growth factor-receptor gene and is amplified in a human salivary gland adenocarcinoma. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 82:6497, 1985
  77. Seshadri R, Matthews C, Dobrovic A, Horsfall DJ. The significance of oncogene amplification in primary breast cancer. *Int J Cancer*. 43:270, 1989
  78. Shih C, Padhy LC, Murray M, Weinberg RA. Transforming genes of carcinomas and neuroblastomas introduced into mouse fibroblasts. *Nature*. 290:261, 1981
  79. Slamon DJ, Clark GM, Wong SG, et al. Human breast cancer: Correlation of relapse and survival with amplification of the *HER-2/neu* oncogene. *Science*. 235:177, 1987
  80. Slamon DJ, Clark GM. Amplification of *c-erbB-2* and aggressive human breast tumors. *Science*. 240:1795, 1988
  81. Slamon DJ, Godolphin W, Jones LA, et al. Studies of the *HER-2/neu* proto-oncogene in human breast and ovarian cancer. *Science*. 244:707, 1989

82. Slebos RJC, Evers SG, Wagenaar SS, Rodenhuis S. Cellular protooncogenes are infrequently amplified in untreated non-small cell lung cancer. *Br J Cancer*. 59:76, 1989
83. Stern DF, Kamps MP, Cao H. Oncogenic activation of p185<sup>neu</sup> stimulates tyrosine phosphorylation in vivo. *Mol Cell Biol*. 8:3969, 1988
84. Tal M, Wetzler M, Josefberg Z, et al. Sporadic amplification of the *HER2/neu* protooncogene in adenocarcinomas of various tissues. *Cancer Res*. 48:1517, 1988
85. Tandon AK, Clark GM, Chamness GC, et al. *HER-2/neu* oncogene protein and prognosis in breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol*. 7:1120, 1989
86. Thor AD, Schwartz LH, Koerner FC, et al. Analysis of *c-erbB-2* expression in breast carcinomas with clinical follow-up. *Cancer Res*. 49:7147, 1989
87. Tuda H, Hirohashi S, Shimosato Y, et al. Correlation between long-term survival in breast cancer patients and amplification of two putative oncogene-coamplification units: *hst-1/int-2* and *c-erbB-2/ear-1*. *Cancer Res*. 49:3104, 1989
88. Tsutsumi Y, Naber SP, DeLellis RA, et al. *Neu* oncogene protein and epidermal growth factor receptor are independently expressed in benign and malignant breast tissues. *Hum Pathol*. 21:750, 1990
89. Tsutsumi Y, Stork PJ, Wolfe HJ. Detection of DNA amplification and mRNA overexpression of the *neu* oncogene in breast carcinomas by polymerase chain reaction (abstract). *Mod Pathol*. 3:101A, 1990
90. Van de Vijver M, van de Bersselaar R, Devilee P, et al. Amplification of the *neu* (*c-erbB-2*) oncogene in human mammary tumors is relatively frequent and is often accompanied by amplification of the linked *c-erbA* oncogene. *Mol Cell Biol*. 7:2019, 1987
91. Van de Vijver MJ, Mooi WJ, Wisman P, et al. Immunohistochemical detection of the *neu* protein in tissue sections of human breast tumors with amplified *neu* DNA. *Oncogene*. 2:175, 1988
92. Van de Vijver MJ, Peterse JL, Mooi WJ, et al. *Neu*-protein overexpression in breast cancer: Association with comedo-type ductal carcinoma in situ and limited prognostic value in stage II breast cancer. *N Engl J Med*. 319:1239, 1988
93. Varley JM, Swallow JE, Brammar WJ, et al. Alterations to either *c-erbB-2* (*neu*) or *c-myc* proto-oncogenes in breast carcinomas correlate with poor short-term prognosis. *Oncogene*. 1:423, 1987
94. Venter DJ, Tuzi NL, Kumar S, Gullick WJ. Overexpression of the *c-erbB-2* oncoprotein in human breast carcinomas: Immunohistological assessment correlates with gene amplification. *Lancet*. 2:69, 1987
95. Voravud N, Foster CS, Gilbertson JA, et al. Oncogene expression in cholangiocarcinoma and in normal hepatic development. *Hum Pathol*. 20:1163, 1989
96. Walker RA, Senior PV, Jones JL, et al. An immunohistochemical and in situ hybridization study of *c-myc* and *c-erbB-2* expression in primary human breast carcinomas. *J Pathol*. 158:97, 1989
97. Ware JL, Maygarden SJ, Koontz WW, Strom SC. Differential reactivity with anti-*c-erbB-2* antiserum among human malignant and benign prostatic tissue (abstract). *Am Assoc Cancer Res Ann Meeting*. 30:437A, 1989
98. Weiner DB, Liu J, Cohen JA, et al. A point mutation in the *neu* oncogene mimics ligand induction of receptor aggregation. *Nature*. 339:230, 1989
99. Weiner DB, Nordberg J, Robinson R, et al. Expression of the *neu* gene-encoded protein (p185<sup>neu</sup>) in human non-small cell carcinomas of the lung. *Cancer Res*. 50:421, 1990



190 T.P. SINGLETON AND J.G. STRICKLER

100. Wells A. The epidermal growth factor receptor and its ligand. In: Benz C, Liu E, eds. *Oncogenes*. Boston, Kluwer Academic Pub; 1989: 143-168
101. Wright C, Angus B, Nicholson S, et al. Expression of *c-erbB-2* oncoprotein: A prognostic indicator in human breast cancer. *Cancer Res*. 49:2087, 1989
102. Wu A, Colombero A, Low J, et al. Analysis of expression and mutation of the *erbB-2* gene in breast carcinoma by the polymerase chain reaction (abstract). *Mod Pathol*. 3:108A, 1990
103. Yamamoto T, Ikawa S, Akiyama T, et al. Similarity of protein encoded by the human *c-erbB-2* gene to epidermal growth factor receptor. *Nature*. 319:230, 1986
104. Yao M, Shuin T, Misaki H, Kubota Y. Enhanced expression of *c-myc* and epidermal growth factor receptor (*C-erbB-1*) genes in primary human renal cancer. *Cancer Res*. 48:6753, 1988
105. Yarden Y, Weinberg RA. Experimental approaches to hypothetical hormones: Detection of a candidate ligand of the *neu* protooncogene. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 86:3179, 1989
106. Yee LD, Kacinski BM, Carter D. Oncogene structure, function and expression in breast cancer. *Semin Diagn Pathol*. 6:110, 1989
107. Yokota J, Yamamoto T, Toyoshima K, et al. Amplification of *c-erbB-2* oncogene in human adenocarcinomas *in vivo*. *Lancet*. 1:765, 1986
108. Yokota J, Yamamoto T, Miyajima N, et al. Genetic alterations of the *c-erbB-2* oncogene occur frequently in tubular adenocarcinoma of the stomach and are often accompanied by amplification of the *v-erbA* homologue. *Oncogene*. 2:283, 1988
109. Zeillinger R, Kury F, Czerwenka K, et al. *HER-2* amplification, steroid receptors and epidermal growth factor receptor in primary breast cancer. *Oncogene*. 4:109, 1989
110. Zhang X, Silva E, Gershenson D, Hung MC. Amplification and rearrangement of *c-erbB* proto-oncogenes in cancer of human female genital tract. *Oncogene*. 4:985, 1989
111. Zhou D, Battifora H, Yokota J, et al. Association of multiple copies of the *c-erbB-2* oncogene with spread of breast cancer. *Cancer Res*. 47:6123, 1987
112. Zhou D, Gonzalez-Cadavid N, Ahuja H, et al. A unique pattern of proto-oncogene abnormalities in ovarian adenocarcinomas. *Cancer*. 62:1573, 1988
113. Zhou D, Ahuja H, Cline MJ. Proto-oncogene abnormalities in human breast cancer: *c-erbB-2* amplification does not correlate with recurrence of disease. *Oncogene*. 4:105, 1989

8 8  
GNR2930R1C3

PATENT

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant : Botstein, et al.  
Appl. No. : 10/032,996  
Filed : December 27, 2001  
For : SECRETED AND  
TRANSMEMBRANE  
POLYPEPTIDES AND NUCLEIC  
ACIDS ENCODING THE SAME  
Examiner : Fredman, J.  
Group Art Unit : 1634

COPY

DECLARATION OF PAUL POLAKIS, PH.D. UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.132

Commissioner for Patents  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Dear Sir:

Attached is the Declaration of Paul Polakis, Ph.D.

Respectfully submitted,

KNOBBE, MARTENS, OLSON & BEAR, LLP

Dated: June 16, 2004

By: Anne Marie Klaiser

Anne Marie Klaiser  
Registration No. 37,649  
Attorney of Record  
Customer No. 30,313  
(619) 235-8550

S:\DOCS\BSQ\BSG-1215.DOC  
-061404

## DECLARATION OF PAUL POLAKIS, Ph.D.

I, Paul Polakis, Ph.D., declare and say as follows:

1. I was awarded a Ph.D. by the Department of Biochemistry of the Michigan State University in 1984. My scientific Curriculum Vitae is attached to and forms part of this Declaration (Exhibit A).
2. I am currently employed by Genentech, Inc. where my job title is Staff Scientist. Since joining Genentech in 1999, one of my primary responsibilities has been leading Genentech's Tumor Antigen Project, which is a large research project with a primary focus on identifying tumor cell markers that find use as targets for both the diagnosis and treatment of cancer in humans.
3. As part of the Tumor Antigen Project, my laboratory has been analyzing differential expression of various genes in tumor cells relative to normal cells. The purpose of this research is to identify proteins that are abundantly expressed on certain tumor cells and that are either (i) not expressed, or (ii) expressed at lower levels, on corresponding normal cells. We call such differentially expressed proteins "tumor antigen proteins". When such a tumor antigen protein is identified, one can produce an antibody that recognizes and binds to that protein. Such an antibody finds use in the diagnosis of human cancer and may ultimately serve as an effective therapeutic in the treatment of human cancer.
4. In the course of the research conducted by Genentech's Tumor Antigen Project, we have employed a variety of scientific techniques for detecting and studying differential gene expression in human tumor cells relative to normal cells, at genomic DNA, mRNA and protein levels. An important example of one such technique is the well known and widely used technique of microarray analysis which has proven to be extremely useful for the identification of mRNA molecules that are differentially expressed in one tissue or cell type relative to another. In the course of our research using microarray analysis, we have identified approximately 200 gene transcripts that are present in human tumor cells at significantly higher levels than in corresponding normal human cells. To date, we have generated antibodies that bind to about 30 of the tumor antigen proteins expressed from these differentially expressed gene transcripts and have used these antibodies to quantitatively determine the level of production of these tumor antigen proteins in both human cancer cells and corresponding normal cells. We have then compared the levels of mRNA and protein in both the tumor and normal cells analyzed.
5. From the mRNA and protein expression analyses described in paragraph 4 above, we have observed that there is a strong correlation between changes in the level of mRNA present in any particular cell type and the level of protein

expressed from that mRNA in that cell type. In approximately 80% of our observations we have found that increases in the level of a particular mRNA correlates with changes in the level of protein expressed from that mRNA when human tumor cells are compared with their corresponding normal cells.

6. Based upon my own experience accumulated in more than 20 years of research, including the data discussed in paragraphs 4 and 5 above and my knowledge of the relevant scientific literature, it is my considered scientific opinion that for human genes, an increased level of mRNA in a tumor cell relative to a normal cell typically correlates to a similar increase in abundance of the encoded protein in the tumor cell relative to the normal cell. In fact, it remains a central dogma in molecular biology that increased mRNA levels are predictive of corresponding increased levels of the encoded protein. While there have been published reports of genes for which such a correlation does not exist, it is my opinion that such reports are exceptions to the commonly understood general rule that increased mRNA levels are predictive of corresponding increased levels of the encoded protein.

7. I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information or belief are believed to be true, and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

Dated: 5/07/04

By: Paul Polakis

Paul Polakis, Ph.D.

## CURRICULUM VITAE

PAUL G. POLAKIS  
Staff Scientist  
Genentech, Inc  
1 DNA Way, MS#40  
S. San Francisco, CA 94080

### EDUCATION:

Ph.D., Biochemistry, Department of Biochemistry,  
Michigan State University (1984)

B.S., Biology. College of Natural Science, Michigan State University (1977)

### PROFESSIONAL EXPERIENCE:

2002-present

Staff Scientist, Genentech, Inc  
S. San Francisco, CA

1999- 2002

Senior Scientist, Genentech, Inc.,  
S. San Francisco, CA

1997 -1999

Research Director  
Onyx Pharmaceuticals, Richmond, CA

1992- 1996

Senior Scientist, Project Leader, Onyx  
Pharmaceuticals, Richmond, CA

1991-1992

Senior Scientist, Chiron Corporation,  
Emeryville, CA.

1989-1991

Scientist, Cetus Corporation, Emeryville CA.

1987-1989

Postdoctoral Research Associate, Genentech,  
Inc., South San Francisco, CA.

1985-1987

Postdoctoral Research Associate, Department  
of Medicine, Duke University Medical Center,  
Durham, NC

1984-1985

Assistant Professor, Department of Chemistry,  
Oberlin College, Oberlin, Ohio

1980-1984

Graduate Research Assistant, Department of  
Biochemistry, Michigan State University  
East Lansing, Michigan

**PUBLICATIONS:**

1. Polakis, P. G. and Wilson, J. E. 1982 Purification of a Highly Bindable Rat Brain Hexokinase by High Performance Liquid Chromatography. **Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.** 107, 937-943.

2. Polakis, P.G. and Wilson, J. E. 1984 Proteolytic Dissection of Rat Brain Hexokinase: Determination of the Cleavage Pattern during Limited Digestion with Trypsin. **Arch. Biochem. Biophys.** 234, 341-352.

3. Polakis, P. G. and Wilson, J. E. 1985 An Intact Hydrophobic N-Terminal Sequence is Required for the Binding of Rat Brain Hexokinase to Mitochondria. **Arch. Biochem. Biophys.** 236, 328-337.

4. Uhing, R.J., Polakis, P.G. and Snyderman, R. 1987 Isolation of GTP-binding Proteins from Myeloid HL60 Cells. **J. Biol. Chem.** 262, 15575-15579.

5. Polakis, P.G., Uhing, R.J. and Snyderman, R. 1988 The Formylpeptide Chemoattractant Receptor Copurifies with a GTP-binding Protein Containing a Distinct 40 kDa Pertussis Toxin Substrate. **J. Biol. Chem.** 263, 4969-4979.

6. Uhing, R. J., Dillon, S., Polakis, P. G., Truett, A. P. and Snyderman, R. 1988 Chemoattractant Receptors and Signal Transduction Processes in Cellular and Molecular Aspects of Inflammation ( Poste, G. and Croke, S. T. eds.) pp 335-379.

7. Polakis, P.G., Evans, T. and Snyderman 1989 Multiple Chromatographic Forms of the Formylpeptide Chemoattractant Receptor and their Relationship to GTP-binding Proteins. **Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.** 161, 276-283.

8. Polakis, P. G., Snyderman, R. and Evans, T. 1989 Characterization of G25K, a GTP-binding Protein Containing a Novel Putative Nucleotide Binding Domain. **Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.** 160, 25-32.

9. Polakis, P., Weber, R.F., Nevins, B., Didsbury, J. Evans, T. and Snyderman, R. 1989 Identification of the *ral* and *rac1* Gene Products, Low Molecular Mass GTP-binding Proteins from Human Platelets. **J. Biol. Chem.** 264, 16383-16389.

10. Snyderman, R., Perianin, A., Evans, T., Polakis, P. and Didsbury, J. 1989 G Proteins and Neutrophil Function. In ADP-Ribosylating Toxins and G Proteins: Insights into Signal Transduction. ( J. Moss and M. Vaughn, eds.) Amer. Soc. Microbiol. pp. 295-323.

11. Hart, M.J., Polakis, P.G., Evans, T. and Cerrione, R.A. 1990 The Identification and Characterization of an Epidermal Growth Factor-Stimulated Phosphorylation of a Specific Low Molecular Mass GTP-binding Protein in a Reconstituted Phospholipid Vesicle System. *J. Biol. Chem.* 265, 5990-6001.
12. Yatani, A., Okabe, K., Polakis, P., Halenbeck, R., McCormick, F. and Brown, A. M. 1990 ras p21 and GAP Inhibit Coupling of Muscarinic Receptors to Atrial K<sup>+</sup> Channels. *Cell*. 61, 769-776.
13. Munemitsu, S., Innis, M.A., Clark, R., McCormick, F., Ullrich, A. and Polakis, P.G. 1990 Molecular Cloning and Expression of a G25K cDNA, the Human Homolog of the Yeast Cell Cycle Gene CDC42. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 10, 5977-5982.
14. Polakis, P.G., Rubinfeld, B., Evans, T. and McCormick, F. 1991 Purification of Plasma Membrane-Associated GTPase Activating Protein (GAP) Specific for rap-1/krev-1 from HL60 Cells. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88, 239-243.
15. Moran, M. F., Polakis, P., McCormick, F., Pawson, T. and Ellis, C. 1991 Protein Tyrosine Kinases Regulate the Phosphorylation, Protein Interactions, Subcellular Distribution, and Activity of p21ras GTPase Activating Protein. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 11, 1804-1812
16. Rubinfeld, B., Wong, G., Bekesi, E., Wood, A., McCormick, F. and Polakis, P. G. 1991 A Synthetic Peptide Corresponding to a Sequence in the GTPase Activating Protein Inhibits p21<sup>ras</sup> Stimulation and Promotes Guanine Nucleotide Exchange. *Internatl. J. Peptide and Prot. Res.* 38, 47-53.
17. Rubinfeld, B., Munemitsu, S., Clark, R., Conroy, L., Watt, K., Crosier, W., McCormick, F., and Polakis, P. 1991 Molecular Cloning of a GTPase Activating Protein Specific for the Krev-1 Protein p21<sup>rap1</sup>. *Cell* 65, 1033-1042.
18. Zhang, K., Papageorge, A., G., Martin, P., Vass, W. C., Olah, Z., Polakis, P., McCormick, F. and Lowy, D. R. 1991 Heterogenous Amino Acids in RAS and Rap1A Specifying Sensitivity to GAP Proteins. *Science* 254, 1630-1634.
19. Martin, G., Yatani, A., Clark, R., Polakis, P., Brown, A. M. and McCormick, F. 1992 GAP Domains Responsible for p21<sup>ras</sup>-dependent Inhibition of Muscarinic Atrial K<sup>+</sup> Channel Currents. *Science* 255, 192-194.
20. McCormick, F., Martin, G. A., Clark, R., Bollag, G. and Polakis, P. 1992 Regulation of p21<sup>ras</sup> by GTPase Activating Proteins. Cold Spring Harbor *Symposia on Quantitative Biology*: Vol. 56, 237-241.
21. Pronk, G. B., Polakis, P., Wong, G., deVries-Smits, A. M., Bos J. L. and McCormick, F. 1992 p60<sup>v-src</sup> Can Associate with and Phosphorylate the p21<sup>ras</sup> GTPase Activating Protein. *Oncogene* 7,389-394.
22. Polakis P. and McCormick, F. 1992 Interactions Between p21<sup>ras</sup> Proteins and Their GTPase Activating Proteins. In Cancer Surveys ( Franks, L. M., ed.) 12, 25-42.

23. Wong, G., Muller, O., Clark, R., Conroy, L., Moran, M., Polakis, P. and McCormick, F. 1992 Molecular cloning and nucleic acid binding properties of the GAP-associated tyrosine phosphoprotein p62. *Cell* 69, 551-558.
24. Polakis, P., Rubinfeld, B. and McCormick, F. 1992 Phosphorylation of rap1GAP in vivo and by cAMP-dependent Kinase and the Cell Cycle p34<sup>cdc2</sup> Kinase in vitro. *J. Biol. Chem.* 267, 10780-10785.
25. McCabe, P.C., Haubrauck, H., Polakis, P., McCormick, F., and Innis, M. A. 1992 Functional Interactions Between p21<sup>rap1A</sup> and Components of the Budding pathway of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 12, 4084-4092.
26. Rubinfeld, B., Crosier, W.J., Albert, I., Conroy, L., Clark, R., McCormick, F. and Polakis, P. 1992 Localization of the rap1GAP Catalytic Domain and Sites of Phosphorylation by Mutational Analysis. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 12, 4634-4642.
27. Ando, S., Kaibuchi, K., Sasaki, K., Hiraoka, T., Nishiyama, T., Mizuno, T., Asada, M., Nuno, H., Matsuda, I., Matsuura, Y., Polakis, P., McCormick, F. and Takai, Y. 1992 Post-translational processing of rac p21s is important both for their interaction with the GDP/GTP exchange proteins and for their activation of NADPH oxidase. *J. Biol. Chem.* 267, 25709-25713.
28. Janoueix-Lerosey, I., Polakis, P., Tavittian, A. and deGunzberg, J. 1992 Regulation of the GTPase activity of the ras-related rap2 protein. *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 189, 455-464.
29. Polakis, P. 1993 GAPs Specific for the rap1/Krev-1 Protein. in GTP-binding Proteins: the ras-superfamily. ( J.C. LaCafe and F. McCormick, eds.) 445-452.
30. Polakis, P. and McCormick, F. 1993 Structural requirements for the interaction of p21<sup>ras</sup> with GAP, exchange factors, and its biological effector target. *J. Biol. Chem.* 268, 9157-9160.
31. Rubinfeld, B., Souza, B., Albert, I., Muller, O., Chamberlain, S., Masiarz, F., Munemitsu, S. and Polakis, P. 1993 Association of the APC gene product with beta-catenin. *Science* 262, 1731-1734.
32. Weiss, J., Rubinfeld, B., Polakis, P., McCormick, F., Cavenee, W. A. and Arden, K. 1993 The gene for human rap1-GTPase activating protein (rap1GAP) maps to chromosome 1p35-1p36.1. *Cytogenet. Cell Genet.* 66, 18-21.
33. Sato, K. Y., Polakis, P., Haubruck, H., Fasching, C. L., McCormick, F. and Stanbridge, E. J. 1994 Analysis of the tumor suppressor activity of the K-rev gene in human tumor cell lines. *Cancer Res.* 54, 552-559.
34. Janoueix-Lerosey, I., Fontenay, M., Tobelem, G., Tavittian, A., Polakis, P. and DeGunzburg, J. 1994 Phosphorylation of rap1GAP during the cell cycle. *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 202, 967-975
35. Munemitsu, S., Souza, B., Mueller, O., Albert, I., Rubinfeld, B., and Polakis, P. 1994 The APC gene product associates with microtubules in vivo and affects their assembly in vitro. *Cancer Res.* 54, 3676-3681.



36. Rubinfeld, B. and Polakis, P. 1995 Purification of baculovirus produced rap1GAP. *Methods Enz.* 255,31
37. Polakis, P. 1995 Mutations in the APC gene and their implications for protein structure and function. *Current Opinions in Genetics and Development* 5, 66-71.
38. Rubinfeld, B., Souza, B., Albert, I., Munemitsu, S. and Polakis P. 1995 The APC protein and E-cadherin form similar but independent complexes with  $\alpha$ -catenin,  $\beta$ -catenin and Plakoglobin. *J. Biol. Chem.* 270, 5549-5555
39. Munemitsu, S., Albert, I., Souza, B., Rubinfeld, B., and Polakis, P. 1995 Regulation of intracellular  $\beta$ -catenin levels by the APC tumor suppressor gene. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 92, 3046-3050.
40. Lock, P., Fumagalli, S., Polakis, P. McCormick, F. and Courtneidge, S. A. 1996 The human p62 cDNA encodes Sam68 and not the rasGAP-associated p62 protein. *Cell* 84, 23-24.
41. Papkoff, J., Rubinfeld, B., Schryver, B. and Polakis, P. 1996 Wnt-1 regulates free pools of catenins and stabilizes APC-catenin complexes. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 16, 2128-2134.
42. Rubinfeld, B., Albert, I., Porfiri, E., Fiol, C., Munemitsu, S. and Polakis, P. 1996 Binding of GSK3 $\beta$  to the APC- $\beta$ -catenin complex and regulation of complex assembly. *Science* 272, 1023-1026.
43. Munemitsu, S., Albert, I., Rubinfeld, B. and Polakis, P. 1996 Deletion of amino-terminal structure stabilizes  $\beta$ -catenin in vivo and promotes the hyperphosphorylation of the APC tumor suppressor protein. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 16, 4088-4094.
44. Hart, M. J., Callow, M. G., Sousa, B. and Polakis P. 1996 IQGAP1, a calmodulin binding protein with a rasGAP related domain, is a potential effector for cdc42Hs. *EMBO J.* 15, 2997-3005.
45. Nathke, I. S., Adams, C. L., Polakis, P., Sellin, J. and Nelson, W. J. 1996 The adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) tumor suppressor protein is localized to plasma membrane sites involved in active epithelial cell migration. *J. Cell. Biol.* 134, 165-180.
46. Hart, M. J., Sharma, S., elMasry, N., Qui, R-G., McCabe, P., Polakis, P. and Bollag, G. 1996 Identification of a novel guanine nucleotide exchange factor for the rho-GTPase. *J. Biol. Chem.* 271, 25452.
47. Thomas JE, Smith M, Rubinfeld B, Gutowski M, Beckmann RP, and Polakis P. 1996 Subcellular localization and analysis of apparent 180-kDa and 220-kDa proteins of the breast cancer susceptibility gene, BRCA1. *J. Biol. Chem.* 1996 271, 28630-28635.
48. Hayashi, S., Rubinfeld, B., Souza, B., Polakis, P., Wieschaus, E., and Levine, A. 1997 A Drosophila homolog of the tumor suppressor adenomatous polyposis coli

down-regulates  $\beta$ -catenin but its zygotic expression is not essential for the regulation of armadillo. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 94, 242-247.

49. Vleminckx, K., Rubinfeld, B., Polakis, P. and Gumbiner, B. 1997 The APC tumor suppressor protein induces a new axis in *Xenopus* embryos. *J. Cell. Biol.* 136, 411-420.

50. Rubinfeld, B., Robbins, P., El-Gamil, M., Albert, I., Porfiri, P. and Polakis, P. 1997 Stabilization of  $\beta$ -catenin by genetic defects in melanoma cell lines. *Science* 275, 1790-1792.

51. Polakis, P. The adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) tumor suppressor. 1997 *Biochem. Biophys. Acta*, 1332, F127-F147.

52. Rubinfeld, B., Albert, I., Porfiri, E., Munemitsu, S., and Polakis, P. 1997 Loss of  $\beta$ -catenin regulation by the APC tumor suppressor protein correlates with loss of structure due to common somatic mutations of the gene. *Cancer Res.* 57, 4624-4630.

53. Porfiri, E., Rubinfeld, B., Albert, I., Hovanes, K., Waterman, M., and Polakis, P. 1997 Induction of a  $\beta$ -catenin-LEF-1 complex by wnt-1 and transforming mutants of  $\beta$ -catenin. *Oncogene* 15, 2833-2839.

54. Thomas JE, Smith M, Tonkinson JL, Rubinfeld B, and Polakis P., 1997 Induction of phosphorylation on BRCA1 during the cell cycle and after DNA damage. *Cell Growth Differ.* 8, 801-809.

55. Hart, M., de los Santos, R., Albert, I., Rubinfeld, B., and Polakis P., 1998 Down regulation of  $\beta$ -catenin by human Axin and its association with the adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) tumor suppressor,  $\beta$ -catenin and glycogen synthase kinase 3 $\beta$ . *Current Biology* 8, 573-581.

56. Polakis, P. 1998 The oncogenic activation of  $\beta$ -catenin. *Current Opinions in Genetics and Development* 9, 15-21

57. Matt Hart, Jean-Paul Concordet, Irina Lassot, Iris Albert, Rico del los Santos, Herve Durand, Christine Perret, Bonnee Rubinfeld, Florence Margottin, Richard Benarous and Paul Polakis. 1999 The F-box protein  $\beta$ -TrCP associates with phosphorylated  $\beta$ -catenin and regulates its activity in the cell. *Current Biology* 9, 207-10.

58. Howard C. Crawford, Barbara M. Fingleton, Bonnee Rubinfeld, Paul Polakis and Lynn M. Matrisian 1999 The metalloproteinase matrilysin is a target of  $\beta$ -catenin transactivation in intestinal tumours. *Oncogene* 18, 2883-91.

59. Meng J, Glick JL, Polakis P, Casey PJ. 1999 Functional interaction between Galpha(z) and Rap1GAP suggests a novel form of cellular cross-talk. *J Biol Chem.* 17, 36663-9

60. Vijayasurian Easwaran, Virginia Song, Paul Polakis and Steve Byers 1999 The ubiquitin-proteasome pathway and serine kinase activity modulate APC mediated regulation of  $\beta$ -catenin-LEF signaling. *J. Biol. Chem.* 274(23):16641-5.
- 61 Polakis P, Hart M and Rubinfeld B. 1999 Defects in the regulation of beta-catenin in colorectal cancer. *Adv Exp Med Biol.* 470, 23-32
- 62 Shen Z, Batzer A, Koehler JA, Polakis P, Schlessinger J, Lydon NB, Moran MF. 1999 Evidence for SH3 domain directed binding and phosphorylation of Sam68 by Src. *Oncogene.* 18, 4647-53
64. Thomas GM, Frame S, Goedert M, Nathke I, Polakis P, Cohen P. 1999 A GSK3- binding peptide from FRAT1 selectively inhibits the GSK3-catalysed phosphorylation of axin and beta-catenin. *FEBS Lett.* 458, 247-51.
65. Peifer M, Polakis P. 2000 Wnt signaling in oncogenesis and embryogenesis—a look outside the nucleus. *Science* 287,1606-9,
66. Polakis P. 2000 Wnt signaling and cancer. *Genes Dev*;14, 1837-1851.
67. Spink KE, Polakis P, Weis WI 2000 Structural basis of the Axin-adenomatous polyposis coli interaction. *EMBO J* 19, 2270-2279.
68. Szeto, W., Jiang, W., Tice, D.A., Rubinfeld, B., Hollingshead, P.G., Fong, S.E., Dugger, D.L., Pham, T., Yansura, D.E., Wong, T.A., Grimaldi, J.C., Corpuz, R.T., Singh J.S., Frantz, G.D., Devaux, B., Crowley, C.W., Schwall, R.H., Eberhard, D.A., Rastelli, L., Polakis, P. and Pennica, D. 2001 Overexpression of the Retinoic Acid-Responsive Gene Stra6 in Human Cancers and its Synergistic Induction by Wnt-1 and Retinoic Acid. *Cancer Res* 61, 4197-4204.
69. Rubinfeld B, Tice DA, Polakis P. 2001 Axin dependent phosphorylation of the adenomatous polyposis coli protein mediated by casein kinase 1 epsilon. *J Biol Chem* 276, 39037-39045.
70. Polakis P. 2001 More than one way to skin a catenin. *Cell* 2001 105, 563-566.
71. Tice DA, Soloviev I, Polakis P. 2002 Activation of the Wnt Pathway Interferes with Serum Response Element-driven Transcription of Immediate Early Genes. *J Biol. Chem.* 277, 6118-6123.
72. Tice DA, Szeto W, Soloviev I, Rubinfeld B, Fong SE, Dugger DL, Winer J,

Williams PM, Wieand D, Smith V, Schwall RH, Pennica D, Polakis P. 2002 Synergistic activation of tumor antigens by wnt-1 signaling and retinoic acid revealed by gene expression profiling. *J Biol Chem.* 277,14329-14335.

73. Polakis, P. 2002 Casein kinase I: A wnt'er of disconnect. *Curr. Biol.* 12, R499.

74. Mao, W., Luis, E., Ross, S., Silva, J., Tan, C., Crowley, C., Chui, C., Franz, G., Senter, P., Koeppen, H., Polakis, P. 2004 EphB2 as a therapeutic antibody drug target for the treatment of colorectal cancer. *Cancer Res.* 64, 781-788.

75. Shibamoto, S., Winer, J., Williams, M., Polakis, P. 2003 A Blockade in Wnt signaling is activated following the differentiation of F9 teratocarcinoma cells. *Exp. Cell Res.* 29211-20.

76. Zhang Y, Eberhard DA, Frantz GD, Dowd P, Wu TD, Zhou Y, Watanabe C, Luoh SM, Polakis P, Hillan KJ, Wood WI, Zhang Z. 2004 GEPIS--quantitative gene expression profiling in normal and cancer tissues. *Bioinformatics*, April 8

MOLECULAR BIOLOGY OF  
**THE CELL**  
THIRD EDITION

Text Editor: Miranda Robertson  
Managing Editor: Ruth Adams  
Illustrator: Nigel Orme  
Molecular Model Drawings: Kate Hesketh-Moore  
Director of Electronic Publishing: John M-Roblin  
Computer Specialist: Chuck Bartelt  
Disk Preparation: Carol Winter  
Copy Editor: Shirley M. Cobert  
Production Editor: Douglas Goertzen  
Production Coordinator: Perry Bessas  
Indexer: Maija Hinkle

*Bruce Alberts* received his Ph.D. from Harvard University and is currently President of the National Academy of Sciences and Professor of Biochemistry and Biophysics at the University of California, San Francisco. *Dennis Bray* received his Ph.D. from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology and is currently a Medical Research Council Fellow in the Department of Zoology, University of Cambridge.

*Julian Lewis* received his D.Phil. from the University of Oxford and is currently a Senior Scientist in the Imperial Cancer Research Fund Developmental Biology Unit, University of Oxford. *Martin Raff* received his M.D. from McGill University and is currently a Professor in the MRC Laboratory for Molecular Cell Biology and the Biology Department, University College London. *Keith Roberts* received his Ph.D. from the University of Cambridge and is currently Head of the Department of Cell Biology, the John Innes Institute, Norwich. *James D. Watson* received his Ph.D. from Indiana University and is currently Director of the Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory. He is the author of *Molecular Biology of the Gene* and, with Francis Crick and Maurice Wilkins, won the Nobel Prize in Medicine and Physiology in 1962.

© 1983, 1989, 1994 by Bruce Alberts, Dennis Bray, Julian Lewis, Martin Raff, Keith Roberts, and James D. Watson.

All rights reserved. No part of this book covered by the copyright hereon may be reproduced or used in any form or by any means—graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or information storage and retrieval systems—without permission of the publisher.

**Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data**

Molecular biology of the cell / Bruce Alberts . . . [et al.].—3rd ed.  
p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 0-8153-1619-4 (hard cover).—ISBN 0-8153-1620-8 (pbk.)

1. Cytology. 2. Molecular biology. I. Alberts, Bruce.

[DNLM: 1. Cells. 2. Molecular Biology. QH 581.2 M718 1994]

QH581.2.M64 1994

574.87—dc20

DNLM/DLC

for Library of Congress

93-45907  
CIP

Published by Garland Publishing, Inc.  
717 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10022

Printed in the United States of America

15 14 13 12 10 9 8 7

**Front cover:** The photograph shows a rat nerve cell in culture. It is labeled (*yellow*) with a fluorescent antibody that stains its cell body and dendritic processes. Nerve terminals (*green*) from other neurons (not visible), which have made synapses on the cell, are labeled with a different antibody. (Courtesy of Olaf Mundigl and Pietro de Camilli.)

**Dedication page:** Gavin Borden, late president of Garland Publishing, weathered in during his mid-1980s climb near Mount McKinley with MBoC author Bruce Alberts and famous mountaineer guide Mugs Stump (1940–1992).

**Back cover:** The authors, in alphabetical order, crossing Abbey Road in London on their way to lunch. Much of this third edition was written in a house just around the corner. (Photograph by Richard Olivier.)

extracts. If these minor cell proteins differ among cells to the same extent as the more abundant proteins, as is commonly assumed, only a small number of protein differences (perhaps several hundred) suffice to create very large differences in cell morphology and behavior.

### A Cell Can Change the Expression of Its Genes in Response to External Signals<sup>3</sup>

Most of the specialized cells in a multicellular organism are capable of altering their patterns of gene expression in response to extracellular cues. If a liver cell is exposed to a glucocorticoid hormone, for example, the production of several specific proteins is dramatically increased. Glucocorticoids are released during periods of starvation or intense exercise and signal the liver to increase the production of glucose from amino acids and other small molecules; the set of proteins whose production is induced includes enzymes such as tyrosine aminotransferase, which helps to convert tyrosine to glucose. When the hormone is no longer present, the production of these proteins drops to its normal level.

Other cell types respond to glucocorticoids in different ways. In fat cells, for example, the production of tyrosine aminotransferase is reduced, while some other cell types do not respond to glucocorticoids at all. These examples illustrate a general feature of cell specialization—different cell types often respond in different ways to the same extracellular signal. Underlying this specialization are features that do not change, which give each cell type its permanently distinctive character. These features reflect the persistent expression of different sets of genes.

### Gene Expression Can Be Regulated at Many of the Steps in the Pathway from DNA to RNA to Protein<sup>4</sup>

If differences between the various cell types of an organism depend on the particular genes that the cells express, at what level is the control of gene expression exercised? There are many steps in the pathway leading from DNA to protein, and all of them can in principle be regulated. Thus a cell can control the proteins it makes by (1) controlling when and how often a given gene is transcribed (**transcriptional control**), (2) controlling how the primary RNA transcript is spliced or otherwise processed (**RNA processing control**), (3) selecting which completed mRNAs in the cell nucleus are exported to the cytoplasm (**RNA transport control**), (4) selecting which mRNAs in the cytoplasm are translated by ribosomes (**translational control**), (5) selectively destabilizing certain mRNA molecules in the cytoplasm (**mRNA degradation control**), or (6) selectively activating, inactivating, or compartmentalizing specific protein molecules after they have been made (**protein activity control**) (Figure 9-2).

For most genes transcriptional controls are paramount. This makes sense because, of all the possible control points illustrated in Figure 9-2, only transcriptional control ensures that no superfluous intermediates are synthesized. In the

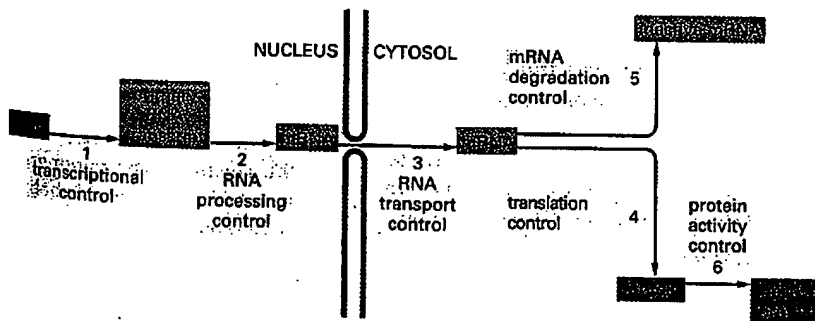


Figure 9-2 Six steps at which eucaryote gene expression can be controlled. Only controls that operate at steps 1 through 5 are discussed in this chapter. The regulation of protein activity (step 6) is discussed in Chapter 5; this includes reversible activation or inactivation by protein phosphorylation as well as irreversible inactivation by proteolytic degradation.

following sections we discuss the DNA and protein components that regulate the initiation of gene transcription. We return at the end of the chapter to the other ways of regulating gene expression.

## Summary

*The genome of a cell contains in its DNA sequence the information to make many thousands of different protein and RNA molecules. A cell typically expresses only a fraction of its genes, and the different types of cells in multicellular organisms arise because different sets of genes are expressed. Moreover, cells can change the pattern of genes they express in response to changes in their environment, such as signals from other cells. Although all of the steps involved in expressing a gene can in principle be regulated, for most genes the initiation of RNA transcription is the most important point of control.*

## DNA-binding Motifs in Gene Regulatory Proteins<sup>5</sup>

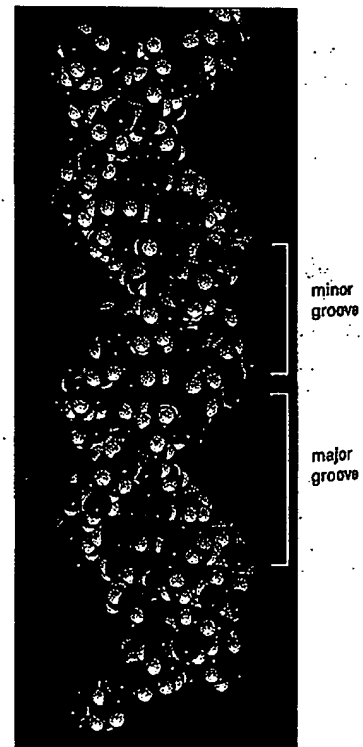
How does a cell determine which of its thousands of genes to transcribe? As discussed in Chapter 8, the transcription of each gene is controlled by a regulatory region of DNA near the site where transcription begins. Some regulatory regions are simple and act as switches that are thrown by a single signal. Other regulatory regions are complex and act as tiny microprocessors, responding to a variety of signals that they interpret and integrate to switch the neighboring gene on or off. Whether complex or simple, these switching devices consist of two fundamental types of components: (1) short stretches of DNA of defined sequence and (2) *gene regulatory proteins* that recognize and bind to them.

We begin our discussion of gene regulatory proteins by describing how these proteins were discovered.

## Gene Regulatory Proteins Were Discovered Using Bacterial Genetics<sup>6</sup>

Genetic analyses in bacteria carried out in the 1950s provided the first evidence of the existence of **gene regulatory proteins** that turn specific sets of genes on or off. One of these regulators, the *lambda repressor*, is encoded by a bacterial virus, *bacteriophage lambda*. The repressor shuts off the viral genes that code for the protein components of new virus particles and thereby enables the viral genome to remain a silent passenger in the bacterial chromosome, multiplying with the bacterium when conditions are favorable for bacterial growth (see Figure 6-80). The lambda repressor was among the first gene regulatory proteins to be characterized, and it remains one of the best understood, as we discuss later. Other bacterial regulators respond to nutritional conditions by shutting off genes encoding specific sets of metabolic enzymes when they are not needed. The *lac repressor*, for example, the first of these bacterial proteins to be recognized, turns off the production of the proteins responsible for lactose metabolism when this sugar is absent from the medium.

The first step toward understanding gene regulation was the isolation of mutant strains of bacteria and bacteriophage lambda that were unable to shut off specific sets of genes. It was proposed at the time, and later proved, that most of these mutants were deficient in proteins acting as specific repressors for these sets of genes. Because these proteins, like most gene regulatory proteins, are present in small quantities, it was difficult and time-consuming to isolate them. They were eventually purified by fractionating cell extracts on a series of standard chromatography columns (see pp. 166-169). Once isolated, the proteins were shown to bind to specific DNA sequences close to the genes that they

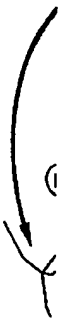
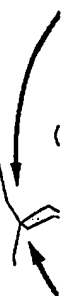


**Figure 9-3 Double-helical structure of DNA.** The major and minor grooves on the outside of the double helix are indicated. The atoms are colored as follows: carbon, dark blue; nitrogen, light blue; hydrogen, white; oxygen, red; phosphorus, yellow.

regulate  
by a cor  
experim

The O

As disci  
double l  
otide se  
these pi  
pairs in  
and anc  
ded wit  
without  
at the s  
bond d  
to reco:  
major g  
(Figure  
jor groc  
Alt  
most ir  
only or  
double



DNA-



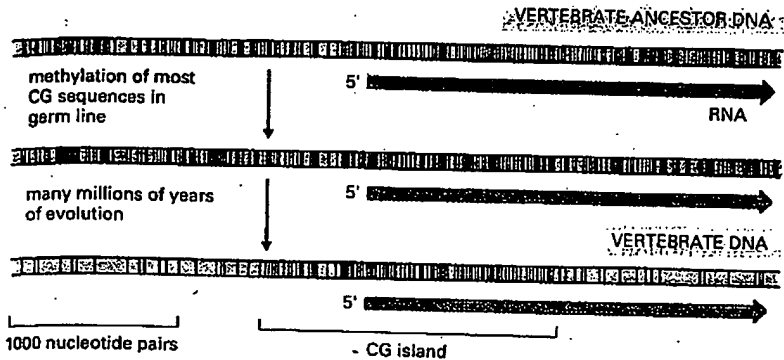


Figure 9-71 A mechanism to explain both the marked deficiency of CG sequences and the presence of CG islands in vertebrate genomes. A black line marks the location of an unmethylated CG dinucleotide in the DNA sequence, while a red line marks the location of a methylated CG dinucleotide.

### Summary

The many types of cells in animals and plants are created largely through mechanisms that cause different genes to be transcribed in different cells. Since many specialized animal cells can maintain their unique character when grown in culture, the gene regulatory mechanisms involved in creating them must be stable once established and heritable when the cell divides, endowing the cell with a memory of its developmental history. Prokaryotes and yeasts provide unusually accessible model systems in which to study gene regulatory mechanisms, some of which may be relevant to the creation of specialized cell types in higher eucaryotes. One such mechanism involves a competitive interaction between two (or more) gene regulatory proteins, each of which inhibits the synthesis of the other; this can create a flip-flop switch that switches a cell between two alternative patterns of gene expression. Direct or indirect positive feedback loops, which enable gene regulatory proteins to perpetuate their own synthesis, provide a general mechanism for cell memory.

In eucaryotes gene transcription is generally controlled by combinations of gene regulatory proteins. It is thought that each type of cell in a higher eucaryotic organism contains a specific combination of gene regulatory proteins that ensures the expression of only those genes appropriate to that type of cell. A given gene regulatory protein may be expressed in a variety of circumstances and typically is involved in the regulation of many genes.

In addition to diffusible gene regulatory proteins, inherited states of chromatin condensation are also utilized by eucaryotic cells to regulate gene expression. In vertebrates DNA methylation also plays a part, mainly as a device to reinforce decisions about gene expression that are made initially by other mechanisms.

### Posttranscriptional Controls

Although controls on the initiation of gene transcription are the predominant form of regulation for most genes, other controls can act later in the pathway from RNA to protein to modulate the amount of gene product that is made. Although these posttranscriptional controls, which operate after RNA polymerase has bound to the gene's promoter and begun RNA synthesis, are less common than transcriptional control, for many genes they are crucial. It seems that every step in gene expression that could be controlled in principle is likely to be regulated under some circumstances for some genes.

We consider the varieties of posttranscriptional regulation in temporal order, according to the sequence of events that might be experienced by an RNA molecule after its transcription has begun (Figure 9-72).

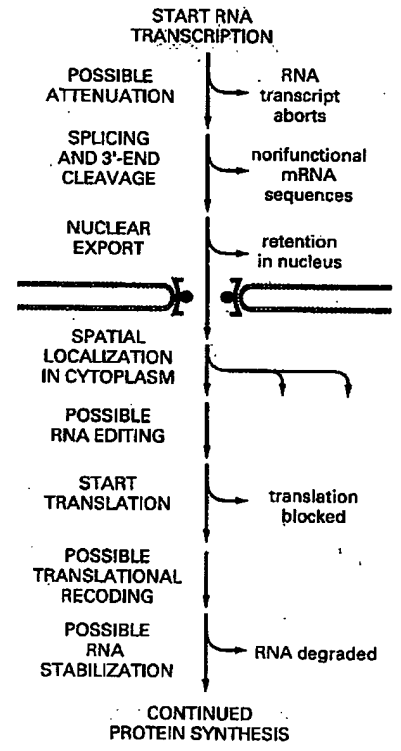


Figure 9-72 Possible posttranscriptional controls on gene expression. Only a few of these controls are likely to be used for any one gene.

three  
nes.  
ent of  
for  
xons  
ive to  
ed from  
-347,

MOLECULAR BIOLOGY OF  
**THE CELL**

fourth edition

Bruce Alberts

Alexander Johnson

Julian Lewis

Martin Raff

Keith Roberts

Peter Walter

 **Garland Science**  
Taylor & Francis Group

**Garland**

Vice President: Denise Schanck  
Managing Editor: Sarah Gibbs  
Senior Editorial Assistant: Kirsten Jenner  
Managing Production Editor: Emma Hunt  
Proofreader and Layout: Emma Hunt  
Production Assistant: Angela Bennett  
Text Editors: Marjorie Singer Anderson and Betsy Dilernia  
Copy Editor: Bruce Goatly  
Word Processors: Fran Dependahl, Misty Landers and Carol Winter  
Designer: Blink Studio, London  
Illustrator: Nigel Orme  
Indexer: Janine Ross and Sherry Granum  
Manufacturing: Nigel Eyre and Marion Morrow

**Cell Biology Interactive**

Artistic and Scientific Direction: Peter Walter  
Narrated by: Julie Theriot  
Production, Design, and Development: Mike Morales

**Bruce Alberts** received his Ph.D. from Harvard University and is President of the National Academy of Sciences and Professor of Biochemistry and Biophysics at the University of California, San Francisco. **Alexander Johnson** received his Ph.D. from Harvard University and is a Professor of Microbiology and Immunology at the University of California, San Francisco. **Julian Lewis** received his D.Phil. from the University of Oxford and is a Principal Scientist at the Imperial Cancer Research Fund, London. **Martin Raff** received his M.D. from McGill University and is at the Medical Research Council Laboratory for Molecular Cell Biology and Cell Biology Unit and in the Biology Department at University College London. **Keith Roberts** received his Ph.D. from the University of Cambridge and is Associate Research Director at the John Innes Centre, Norwich. **Peter Walter** received his Ph.D. from The Rockefeller University in New York and is Professor and Chairman of the Department of Biochemistry and Biophysics at the University of California, San Francisco, and an Investigator of the Howard Hughes Medical Institute.

© 2002 by Bruce Alberts, Alexander Johnson, Julian Lewis, Martin Raff, Keith Roberts, and Peter Walter.  
© 1983, 1989, 1994 by Bruce Alberts, Dennis Bray, Julian Lewis, Martin Raff, Keith Roberts, and James D. Watson.

All rights reserved. No part of this book covered by the copyright hereon may be reproduced or used in any format in any form or by any means—graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or information storage and retrieval systems—without permission of the publisher.

**Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data**

Molecular biology of the cell / Bruce Alberts ... [et al.]-- 4th ed.  
p. cm  
Includes bibliographical references and index.  
ISBN 0-8153-3218-1 (hardbound) -- ISBN 0-8153-4072-9 (pbk.)  
1. Cytology. 2. Molecular biology. I. Alberts, Bruce.  
[DNLM: 1. Cells. 2. Molecular Biology.]  
QH581.2 .M64 2002  
571.6--dc21

2001054471 CIP

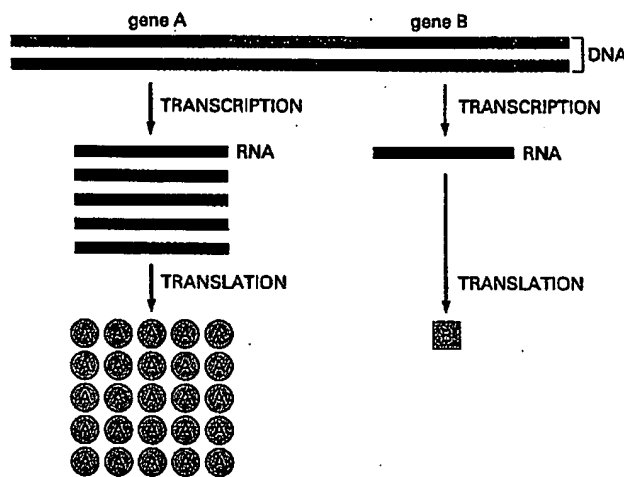
Published by Garland Science, a member of the Taylor & Francis Group,  
29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001-2299

Printed in the United States of America

15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

**Front cover** Human Genome: Reprinted by permission from *Nature*, International Human Genome Sequencing Consortium, 409:860–921, 2001 © Macmillan Magazines Ltd. Adapted from an image by Francis Collins, NHGRI; Jim Kent, UCSC; Ewan Birney, EBI; and Darryl Leja, NHGRI; showing a portion of Chromosome 1 from the initial sequencing of the human genome.

**Back cover** In 1967, the British artist Peter Blake created a design classic. Nearly 35 years later Nigel Orme (illustrator), Richard Denyer (photographer), and the authors have together produced an affectionate tribute to Mr Blake's image. With its gallery of icons and influences, its assembly created almost as much complexity, intrigue and mystery as the original. *Drosophila*, *Arabidopsis*, Dolly and the assembled company tempt you to dip inside where, as in the original, "a splendid time is guaranteed for all." (Gunter Blobel, courtesy of The Rockefeller University; Marie Curie, Keystone Press Agency Inc; Darwin bust, by permission of the President and Council of the Royal Society; Rosalind Franklin, courtesy of Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Archives; Dorothy Hodgkin, © The Nobel Foundation, 1964; James Joyce, etching by Peter Blake; Robert Johnson, photo booth self-portrait early 1930s, © 1986 Delta Haze Corporation all rights reserved, used by permission; Albert L. Lehninger, (unidentified photographer) courtesy of The Alan Mason Chesney Medical Archives of The Johns Hopkins Medical Institutions; Linus Pauling, from Ava Helen and Linus Pauling Papers, Special Collections, Oregon State University; Nicholas Poussin, courtesy of ArtToday.com; Barbara McClintock, © David Micklos, 1983; Andrei Sakharov, courtesy of Elena Bonner; Frederick Sanger, © The Nobel Foundation, 1958.)



**Figure 6-3** Genes can be expressed with different efficiencies. Gene A is transcribed and translated much more efficiently than gene B. This allows the amount of protein A in the cell to be much greater than that of protein B.

## FROM DNA TO RNA

Transcription and translation are the means by which cells read out, or express, the genetic instructions in their genes. Because many identical RNA copies can be made from the same gene, and each RNA molecule can direct the synthesis of many identical protein molecules, cells can synthesize a large amount of protein rapidly when necessary. But each gene can also be transcribed and translated with a different efficiency, allowing the cell to make vast quantities of some proteins and tiny quantities of others (Figure 6-3). Moreover, as we see in the next chapter, a cell can change (or regulate) the expression of each of its genes according to the needs of the moment—most obviously by controlling the production of its RNA.

## Portions of DNA Sequence Are Transcribed into RNA

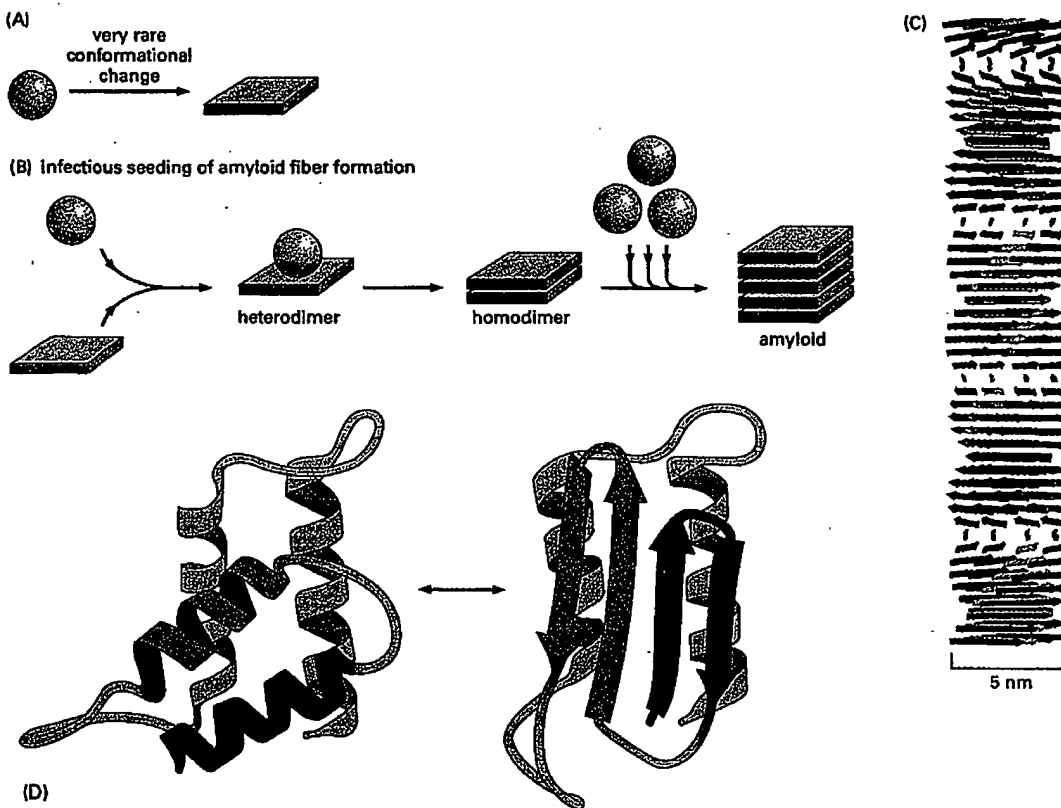
The first step a cell takes in reading out a needed part of its genetic instructions is to copy a particular portion of its DNA nucleotide sequence—a gene—into an RNA nucleotide sequence. The information in RNA, although copied into another chemical form, is still written in essentially the same language as it is in DNA—the language of a nucleotide sequence. Hence the name **transcription**.

Like DNA, RNA is a linear polymer made of four different types of nucleotide subunits linked together by phosphodiester bonds (Figure 6-4). It differs from DNA chemically in two respects: (1) the nucleotides in RNA are *ribonucleotides*—that is, they contain the sugar ribose (hence the name *ribonucleic acid*) rather than deoxyribose; (2) although, like DNA, RNA contains the bases adenine (A), guanine (G), and cytosine (C), it contains the base uracil (U) instead of the thymine (T) in DNA. Since U, like T, can base-pair by hydrogen-bonding with A (Figure 6-5), the complementary base-pairing properties described for DNA in Chapters 4 and 5 apply also to RNA (in RNA, G pairs with C, and A pairs with U). It is not uncommon, however, to find other types of base pairs in RNA: for example, G pairing with U occasionally.

Despite these small chemical differences, DNA and RNA differ quite dramatically in overall structure. Whereas DNA always occurs in cells as a double-stranded helix, RNA is single-stranded. RNA chains therefore fold up into a variety of shapes, just as a polypeptide chain folds up to form the final shape of a protein (Figure 6-6). As we see later in this chapter, the ability to fold into complex three-dimensional shapes allows some RNA molecules to have structural and catalytic functions.

## Transcription Produces RNA Complementary to One Strand of DNA

All of the RNA in a cell is made by DNA transcription, a process that has certain similarities to the process of DNA replication discussed in Chapter 5.



**Figure 6-89 Protein aggregates that cause human disease.** (A) Schematic illustration of the type of conformational change in a protein that produces material for a cross-beta filament. (B) Diagram illustrating the self-infectious nature of the protein aggregation that is central to prion diseases. PrP is highly unusual because the misfolded version of the protein, called PrP<sup>\*</sup>, induces the normal PrP protein it contacts to change its conformation, as shown. Most of the human diseases caused by protein aggregation are caused by the overproduction of a variant protein that is especially prone to aggregation, but because this structure is not infectious in this way, it cannot spread from one animal to another. (C) Drawing of a cross-beta filament, a common type of protease-resistant protein aggregate found in a variety of human neurological diseases. Because the hydrogen-bond interactions in a  $\beta$  sheet form between polypeptide backbone atoms (see Figure 3-9), a number of different abnormally folded proteins can produce this structure. (D) One of several possible models for the conversion of PrP to PrP<sup>\*</sup>, showing the likely change of two  $\alpha$ -helices into four  $\beta$ -strands. Although the structure of the normal protein has been determined accurately, the structure of the infectious form is not yet known with certainty because the aggregation has prevented the use of standard structural techniques. (C, courtesy of Louise Serpell, adapted from M. Sunde et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 273:729-739, 1997; D, adapted from S.B. Prusiner, *Trends Biochem. Sci.* 21:482-487, 1996.)

animals and humans. It can be dangerous to eat the tissues of animals that contain PrP<sup>\*</sup>, as witnessed most recently by the spread of BSE (commonly referred to as the "mad cow disease") from cattle to humans in Great Britain.

Fortunately, in the absence of PrP<sup>\*</sup>, PrP is extraordinarily difficult to convert to its abnormal form. Although very few proteins have the potential to misfold into an infectious conformation, a similar transformation has been discovered to be the cause of an otherwise mysterious "protein-only inheritance" observed in yeast cells.

### There Are Many Steps From DNA to Protein

We have seen so far in this chapter that many different types of chemical reactions are required to produce a properly folded protein from the information contained in a gene (Figure 6-90). The final level of a properly folded protein in a cell therefore depends upon the efficiency with which each of the many steps is performed.

We discuss in Chapter 7 that cells have the ability to change the levels of their proteins according to their needs. In principle, any or all of the steps in Fig-

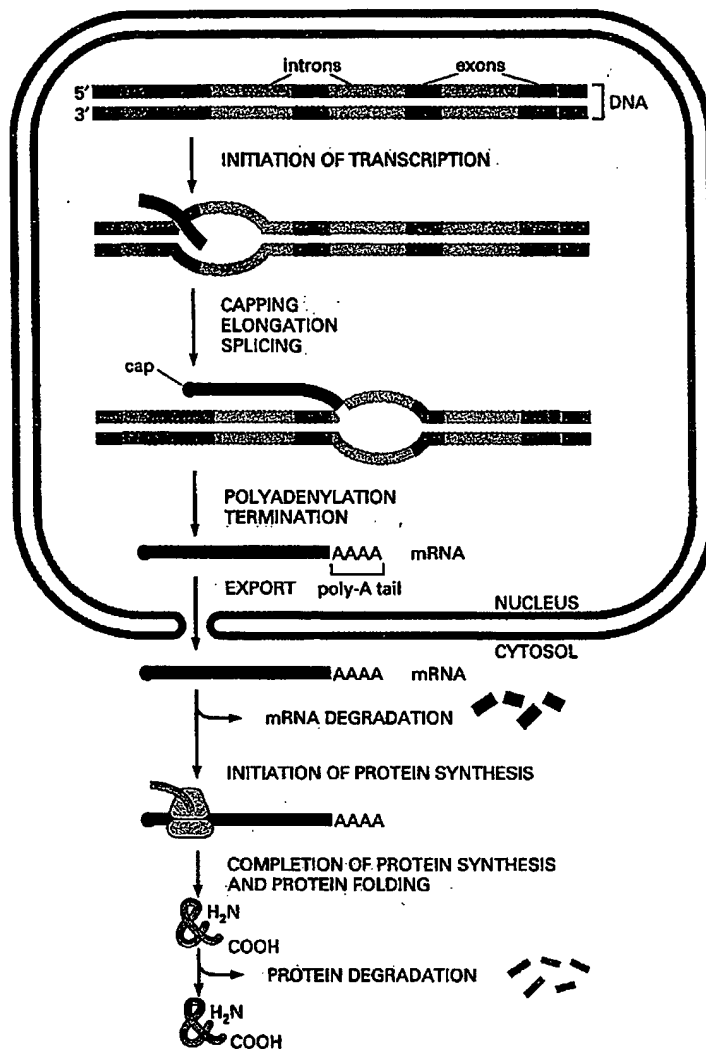


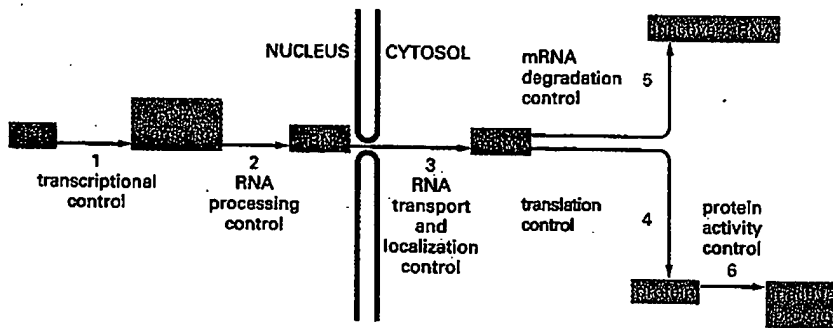
Figure 6-90 The production of a protein by a eucaryotic cell. The final level of each protein in a eucaryotic cell depends upon the efficiency of each step depicted.

ure 6-90) could be regulated by the cell for each individual protein. However, as we shall see in Chapter 7, the initiation of transcription is the most common point for a cell to regulate the expression of each of its genes. This makes sense, inasmuch as the most efficient way to keep a gene from being expressed is to block the very first step—the transcription of its DNA sequence into an RNA molecule.

## Summary

*The translation of the nucleotide sequence of an mRNA molecule into protein takes place in the cytoplasm on a large ribonucleoprotein assembly called a ribosome. The amino acids used for protein synthesis are first attached to a family of tRNA molecules, each of which recognizes, by complementary base-pair interactions, particular sets of three nucleotides in the mRNA (codons). The sequence of nucleotides in the mRNA is then read from one end to the other in sets of three according to the genetic code.*

*To initiate translation, a small ribosomal subunit binds to the mRNA molecule at a start codon (AUG) that is recognized by a unique initiator tRNA molecule. A large ribosomal subunit binds to complete the ribosome and begin the elongation phase of protein synthesis. During this phase, aminoacyl tRNAs—each bearing a specific amino acid bind sequentially to the appropriate codon in mRNA by forming complementary base pairs with the tRNA anticodon. Each amino acid is added to the C-terminal end of the growing polypeptide by means of a cycle of three sequential*



**Figure 7-5** Six steps at which eucaryotic gene expression can be controlled. Controls that operate at steps 1 through 5 are discussed in this chapter. Step 6, the regulation of protein activity, includes reversible activation or inactivation by protein phosphorylation (discussed in Chapter 3) as well as irreversible inactivation by proteolytic degradation (discussed in Chapter 6).

## Gene Expression Can Be Regulated at Many of the Steps in the Pathway from DNA to RNA to Protein

If differences among the various cell types of an organism depend on the particular genes that the cells express, at what level is the control of gene expression exercised? As we saw in the last chapter, there are many steps in the pathway leading from DNA to protein, and all of them can in principle be regulated. Thus a cell can control the proteins it makes by (1) controlling when and how often a given gene is transcribed (**transcriptional control**), (2) controlling how the RNA transcript is spliced or otherwise processed (**RNA processing control**), (3) selecting which completed mRNAs in the cell nucleus are exported to the cytosol and determining where in the cytosol they are localized (**RNA transport and localization control**), (4) selecting which mRNAs in the cytoplasm are translated by ribosomes (**translational control**), (5) selectively destabilizing certain mRNA molecules in the cytoplasm (**mRNA degradation control**), or (6) selectively activating, inactivating, degrading, or compartmentalizing specific protein molecules after they have been made (**protein activity control**) (Figure 7-5).

For most genes transcriptional controls are paramount. This makes sense because, of all the possible control points illustrated in Figure 7-5, only transcriptional control ensures that the cell will not synthesize superfluous intermediates. In the following sections we discuss the DNA and protein components that perform this function by regulating the initiation of gene transcription. We shall return at the end of the chapter to the additional ways of regulating gene expression.

### Summary

*The genome of a cell contains in its DNA sequence the information to make many thousands of different protein and RNA molecules. A cell typically expresses only a fraction of its genes, and the different types of cells in multicellular organisms arise because different sets of genes are expressed. Moreover, cells can change the pattern of genes they express in response to changes in their environment, such as signals from other cells. Although all of the steps involved in expressing a gene can in principle be regulated, for most genes the initiation of RNA transcription is the most important point of control.*

## DNA-BINDING MOTIFS IN GENE REGULATORY PROTEINS

How does a cell determine which of its thousands of genes to transcribe? As mentioned briefly in Chapters 4 and 6, the transcription of each gene is controlled by a regulatory region of DNA relatively near the site where transcription begins. Some regulatory regions are simple and act as switches that are thrown by a single signal. Many others are complex and act as tiny microprocessors, responding to a variety of signals that they interpret and integrate to switch the neighboring gene on or off. Whether complex or simple, these switching devices

occur in the germ line, the cell lineage that gives rise to sperm or eggs. Most of the DNA in vertebrate germ cells is inactive and highly methylated. Over long periods of evolutionary time, the methylated CG sequences in these inactive regions have presumably been lost through spontaneous deamination events that were not properly repaired. However promoters of genes that remain active in the germ cell lineages (including most housekeeping genes) are kept unmethylated, and therefore spontaneous deaminations of Cs that occur within them can be accurately repaired. Such regions are preserved in modern day vertebrate cells as CG islands. In addition, any mutation of a CG sequence in the genome that destroyed the function or regulation of a gene in the adult would be selected against, and some CG islands are simply the result of a higher than normal density of critical CG sequences.

The mammalian genome contains an estimated 20,000 CG islands. Most of the islands mark the 5' ends of transcription units and thus, presumably, of genes. The presence of CG islands often provides a convenient way of identifying genes in the DNA sequences of vertebrate genomes.

## Summary

*The many types of cells in animals and plants are created largely through mechanisms that cause different genes to be transcribed in different cells. Since many specialized animal cells can maintain their unique character through many cell division cycles and even when grown in culture, the gene regulatory mechanisms involved in creating them must be stable once established and heritable when the cell divides. These features endow the cell with a memory of its developmental history. Bacteria and yeasts provide unusually accessible model systems in which to study gene regulatory mechanisms. One such mechanism involves a competitive interaction between two gene regulatory proteins, each of which inhibits the synthesis of the other; this can create a flip-flop switch that switches a cell between two alternative patterns of gene expression. Direct or indirect positive feedback loops, which enable gene regulatory proteins to perpetuate their own synthesis, provide a general mechanism for cell memory. Negative feedback loops with programmed delays form the basis for cellular clocks.*

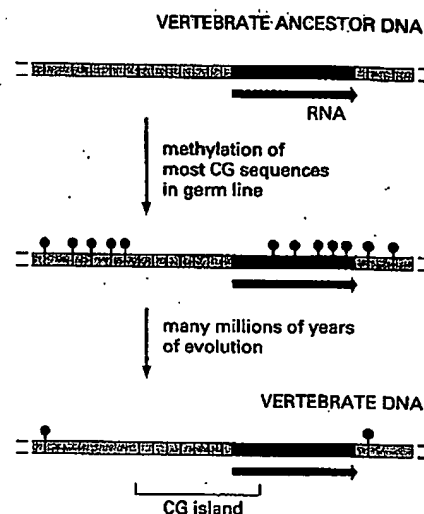
*In eucaryotes the transcription of a gene is generally controlled by combinations of gene regulatory proteins. It is thought that each type of cell in a higher eucaryotic organism contains a specific combination of gene regulatory proteins that ensures the expression of only those genes appropriate to that type of cell. A given gene regulatory protein may be active in a variety of circumstances and typically is involved in the regulation of many genes.*

*In addition to diffusible gene regulatory proteins, inherited states of chromatin condensation are also used by eucaryotic cells to regulate gene expression. An especially dramatic case is the inactivation of an entire X chromosome in female mammals. In vertebrates DNA methylation also functions in gene regulation, being used mainly as a device to reinforce decisions about gene expression that are made initially by other mechanisms. DNA methylation also underlies the phenomenon of genomic imprinting in mammals, in which the expression of a gene depends on whether it was inherited from the mother or the father.*

## POSTTRANSCRIPTIONAL CONTROLS

In principle, every step required for the process of gene expression could be controlled. Indeed, one can find examples of each type of regulation, although any one gene is likely to use only a few of them. Controls on the initiation of gene transcription are the predominant form of regulation for most genes. But other controls can act later in the pathway from DNA to protein to modulate the amount of gene product that is made. Although these **posttranscriptional controls**, which operate after RNA polymerase has bound to the gene's promoter and begun RNA synthesis, are less common than *transcriptional control*, for many genes they are crucial.

### POSTTRANSCRIPTIONAL CONTROLS



**Figure 7-86** A mechanism to explain both the marked overall deficiency of CG sequences and their clustering into CG islands in vertebrate genomes. A black line marks the location of a CG dinucleotide in the DNA sequence, while a red "lollipop" indicates the presence of a methyl group on the CG dinucleotide. CG sequences that lie in regulatory sequences of genes that are transcribed in germ cells are unmethylated and therefore tend to be retained in evolution. Methylated CG sequences, on the other hand, tend to be lost through deamination of 5-methyl C to T, unless the CG sequence is critical for survival.



# CHAPTER 29

## Regulation of transcription

Genes VI (1997) CH 29, pp. 847-848.  
Benjamin Lewin

The phenotypic differences that distinguish the various kinds of cells in a higher eukaryote are largely due to differences in the expression of genes that code for proteins, that is, those transcribed by RNA polymerase II. In principle, the expression of these genes might be regulated at any one of several stages. The concept of the "level of control" implies that gene expression is not necessarily an automatic process once it has begun. It could be regulated in a gene-specific way at any one of several sequential steps. We can distinguish (at least) five potential control points, forming the series:

Activation of gene structure  
↓  
Initiation of transcription  
↓  
Processing the transcript  
↓  
Transport to cytoplasm  
↓  
Translation of mRNA

The existence of the first step is implied by the discovery that genes may exist in either of two structural conditions. Relative to the state of most of the genome, genes are found in an "active" state in the cells in which they are expressed (see Chapter 27). The change of structure is distinct from the act of transcription, and indicates that the gene is "transcribable." This suggests that acquisition of the "active" structure must be the first step in gene expression.

Transcription of a gene in the active state is

controlled at the stage of initiation, that is, by the interaction of RNA polymerase with its promoter. This is now becoming susceptible to analysis in the *in vitro* systems (see Chapter 28). For most genes, this is a major control point; probably it is the most common level of regulation.

There is at present no evidence for control at subsequent stages of transcription in eukaryotic cells, for example, via antitermination mechanisms.

The primary transcript is modified by capping at the 5' end, and usually also by polyadenylation at the 3' end. Introns must be spliced out from the transcripts of interrupted genes. The mature RNA must be exported from the nucleus to the cytoplasm. Regulation of gene expression by selection of sequences at the level of nuclear RNA might involve any or all of these stages, but the one for which we have most evidence concerns changes in splicing; some genes are expressed by means of alternative splicing patterns whose regulation controls the type of protein product (see Chapter 30).

Finally, the translation of an mRNA in the cytoplasm can be specifically controlled. There is little evidence for the employment of this mechanism in adult somatic cells, but it does occur in some embryonic situations, as described in Chapter 7. The mechanism is presumed to involve the blocking of initiation of translation of some mRNAs by specific protein factors.

But having acknowledged that control of gene expression can occur at multiple stages, and that production of RNA cannot inevitably be equated with production of protein, it is clear

that the overwhelming majority of regulatory events occur at the initiation of transcription. Regulation of tissue-specific gene transcription lies at the heart of eukaryotic differentiation; indeed, we see examples in Chapter 38 in which proteins that regulate embryonic development prove to be transcription factors. A regulatory transcription factor serves to provide

common control of a large number of target genes, and we seek to answer two questions about this mode of regulation: what identifies the common target genes to the transcription factor; and how is the activity of the transcription factor itself regulated in response to intrinsic or extrinsic signals?

## Response elements identify genes under common regulation

The principle that emerges from characterizing groups of genes under common control is that *they share a promoter element that is recognized by a regulatory transcription factor*. An element that causes a gene to respond to such a factor is called a **response element**; examples are the HSE (heat shock response element), GRE (glucocorticoid response element), SRE (serum response element).

The properties of some inducible transcription factors and the elements that they recognize are summarized in Table 29.1. Response elements have the same general characteristics as upstream elements of promoters or enhancers. They contain short consensus sequences, and copies of the response elements found in different genes are closely related, but not necessarily identical. The region bound by the factor extends for a short distance on either side of

the consensus sequence. In promoters, the elements are not present at fixed distances from the startpoint, but are usually <200 bp upstream of it. The presence of a single element usually is sufficient to confer the regulatory response, but sometimes there are multiple copies.

Response elements may be located in promoters or in enhancers. Some types of elements are typically found in one rather than the other: usually an HSE is found in a promoter, while a GRE is found in an enhancer. We assume that all response elements function by the same general principle. *A gene is regulated by a sequence at the promoter or enhancer that is recognized by a specific protein. The protein functions as a transcription factor needed for RNA polymerase to initiate. Active protein is available only under conditions when the gene is to be expressed; its absence means that the promoter is not activated by this particular circuit.*

An example of a situation in which many genes are controlled by a single factor is provided by the heat shock response. This is common to a wide range of prokaryotes and eukaryotes and involves multiple controls of gene expression: an increase in temperature turns off transcription of some genes, and transcription of the heat shock genes, and causes changes in the translation of mRNAs. The control of the heat shock genes illustrates the differences between prokaryotic and eukaryotic modes of control. In bacteria, a new sigma factor is synthesized that directs RNA polymerase holoenzyme to recognize an alter-

Table 29.1 Inducible transcription factors bind to response elements that identify groups of promoters or enhancers subject to coordinate control.

Regulatory Agent	Module	Consensus	Factor
Heat shock	HSE	CNNGAANNTCCNNG	HSTF
Glucocorticoid	GRE	TGGTACAAATGTTCT	Receptor
Phorbol ester	TRE	TGACTCA	AP1
Serum	SRE	CCATATTAGG	SRF

Research

Open Access

## Prostate stem cell antigen (PSCA) expression in human prostate cancer tissues and its potential role in prostate carcinogenesis and progression of prostate cancer

Zhao Zhigang\*<sup>1</sup> and Shen Wenlv<sup>2</sup>

Address: <sup>1</sup>Department of Urology, Shantou University Medical College, Shantou, Guangdong, China and <sup>2</sup>Department of Urology, No 2. Affiliated Hospital of Shantou University Medical College, Shantou, Guangdong, China

Email: Zhao Zhigang\* - zgzhaodr@yahoo.com.cn; Shen Wenlv - wlshen99@hotmail.com

\* Corresponding author

Published: 10 May 2004

Received: 30 March 2004

World Journal of Surgical Oncology 2004, 2:13

Accepted: 10 May 2004

This article is available from: <http://www.wjso.com/content/2/1/13>

© 2004 Zhigang and Wenlv; licensee BioMed Central Ltd. This is an Open Access article: verbatim copying and redistribution of this article are permitted in all media for any purpose, provided this notice is preserved along with the article's original URL.

### Abstract

**Background:** Prostate stem cell antigen (PSCA) is a recently defined homologue of the Thy-1/Ly-6 family of glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI)-anchored cell surface antigens. The purpose of the present study was to examine the expression status of PSCA protein and mRNA in clinical specimens of human prostate cancer (Pca) and to validate it as a potential molecular target for diagnosis and treatment of Pca.

**Materials and Methods:** Immunohistochemical (IHC) and *in situ* hybridization (ISH) analyses of PSCA expression were simultaneously performed on paraffin-embedded sections from 20 benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH), 20 prostatic intraepithelial neoplasm (PIN) and 48 prostate cancer (Pca) tissues, including 9 androgen-independent prostate cancers. The level of PSCA expression was semiquantitatively scored by assessing both the percentage and intensity of PSCA-positive staining cells in the specimens. Then compared PSCA expression between BPH, PIN and Pca tissues and analysed the correlations of PSCA expression level with pathological grade, clinical stage and progression to androgen-independence in Pca.

**Results:** In BPH and low grade PIN, PSCA protein and mRNA staining were weak or negative and less intense and uniform than that seen in HGPIN and Pca. There were moderate to strong PSCA protein and mRNA expression in 8 of 11 (72.7%) HGPIN and in 40 of 48 (83.4%) Pca specimens examined by IHC and ISH analyses, with statistical significance compared with BPH (20%) and low grade PIN (22.2%) samples ( $p < 0.05$ , respectively). The expression level of PSCA increased with high Gleason grade, advanced stage and progression to androgen-independence ( $p < 0.05$ , respectively). In addition, IHC and ISH staining showed a high degree of correlation between PSCA protein and mRNA overexpression.

**Conclusions:** Our data demonstrate that PSCA as a new cell surface marker is overexpressed by a majority of human Pca. PSCA expression correlates positively with adverse tumor characteristics, such as increasing pathological grade (poor cell differentiation), worsening clinical stage and androgen-independence, and speculatively with prostate carcinogenesis. PSCA protein overexpression results from upregulated transcription of PSCA mRNA. PSCA may have prognostic utility and may be a promising molecular target for diagnosis and treatment of Pca.

## Introduction

Prostate cancer (Pca) is the second leading cause of cancer-related death in American men and is becoming a common cancer increasing in China. Despite recently great progress in the diagnosis and management of localized disease, there continues to be a need for new diagnostic markers that can accurately discriminate between indolent and aggressive variants of Pca. There also continues to be a need for the identification and characterization of potential new therapeutic targets on Pca cells. Current diagnostic and therapeutic modalities for recurrent and metastatic Pca have been limited by a lack of specific target antigens of Pca.

Although a number of prostate-specific genes have been identified (i.e. prostate specific antigen, prostatic acid phosphatase, glandular kallikrein 2), the majority of these are secreted proteins not ideally suited for many immunological strategies. So, the identification of new cell surface antigens is critical to the development of new diagnostic and therapeutic approaches to the management of Pca.

Reiter RE et al [1] reported the identification of prostate stem cell antigen (PSCA), a cell surface antigen that is predominantly prostate specific. The PSCA gene encodes a 123 amino acid glycoprotein, with 30% homology to stem cell antigen 2 (Sca 2). Like Sca-2, PSCA also belongs to a member of the Thy-1/Ly-6 family and is anchored by a glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) linkage. mRNA *in situ* hybridization (ISH) localized PSCA expression in normal prostate to the basal cell epithelium, the putative stem cell compartment of prostatic epithelium, suggesting that PSCA may be a marker of prostate stem/progenitor cells.

In order to examine the status of PSCA protein and mRNA expression in human Pca and validate it as a potential diagnostic and therapeutic target for Pca, we used immunohistochemistry (IHC) and *in situ* hybridization (ISH) simultaneously, and conducted PSCA protein and mRNA expression analyses in paraffin-embedded tissue specimens of benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH, n = 20), prostate intraepithelial neoplasm (PIN, n = 20) and prostate cancer (Pca, n = 48). Furthermore, we evaluated the possible correlation of PSCA expression level with Pca tumorigenesis, grade, stage and progression to androgen-independence.

## Materials and methods

### Tissue samples

All of the clinical tissue specimens studied herein were obtained from 80 patients of 57-84 years old by prostatectomy, transurethral resection of prostate (TURP) or biopsies. The patients were classified as 20 cases of BPH, 20 cases of PIN, 40 cases of primary Pca, including 9 patients

with recurrent Pca and a history of androgen ablation therapy (orchiectomy and/or hormonal therapy), who were referred to as androgen-independent prostate cancers. Eight specimens were harvested from these androgen-independent Pca patients prior to androgen ablation treatment. Each tissue sample was cut into two parts, one was fixed in 10% formalin for IHC and the other treated with 4% paraformaldehyde/0.1 M PBS PH 7.4 in 0.1% DEPC for 1 h for ISH analysis, and then embedded in paraffin. All paraffin blocks examined were then cut into 5  $\mu$ m sections and mounted on the glass slides specific for IHC and ISH respectively in the usual fashion. H&E-stained section of each Pca was evaluated and assigned a Gleason score by the experienced urological pathologist at our institution based on the criteria of Gleason score [2]. The Gleason sums are summarized in Table 1. Clinical staging was performed according to Jewett-whitmore-prout staging system, as shown in Table 2. In the category of PIN, we graded the specimens into two groups, i.e. low grade PIN (grade I - II) and high grade PIN (HG PIN, grade III) on the basis of literatures [3,4].

### Immunohistochemical (IHC) analysis

Briefly, tissue sections were deparaffinized, dehydrated, and subjected to microwaving in 10 mmol/L citrate buffer, PH 6.0 (Boshide, Wuhan, China) in a 900 W oven for 5 min to induce epitope retrieval. Slides were allowed to cool at room temperature for 30 min. A primary mouse antibody specific to human PSCA (Boshide, Wuhan, China) with a 1:100 dilution was applied to incubate with the slides at room temperature for 2 h. Labeling was detected by sequentially adding biotinylated secondary antibodies and streptavidin-peroxidase, and localized using 3,3'-diaminobenzidine reaction. Sections were then counterstained with hematoxylin. Substitution of the primary antibody with phosphate-buffered-saline (PBS) served as a negative-staining control.

### mRNA *in situ* hybridization (ISH)

Five- $\mu$ m-thick tissue sections were deparaffinized and dehydrated, then digested in pepsin solution (4 mg/ml in 3% citric acid) for 20 min at 37.5°C, and further processed for ISH. Digoxigenin-labeled sense and antisense human PSCA RNA probes (obtained from Boshide, Wuhan, China) were hybridized to the sections at 48°C overnight. The posthybridization wash with a high stringency was performed sequentially at 37°C in 2  $\times$  standard saline citrate (SSC) for 10 min, in 0.5  $\times$  SSC for 15 min and in 0.2  $\times$  SSC for 30 min. The slides were then incubated to biotinylated mouse anti-digoxigenin antibody at 37.5°C for 1 h followed by washing in 1  $\times$  PBS for 20 min at room temperature, and then to streptavidin-peroxidase at 37.5°C for 20 min followed by washing in 1  $\times$  PBS for 15 min at room temperature. Subsequently, the slides were developed with diaminobenzidine and then coun-

Table 1: Correlation of PSCA expression with Gleason score

Gleason score	Intensity × frequency	
	0-6 (%)	9 (%)
2-4	5 (83)	1 (17)
5-7	19 (79)	5 (21)
8-10	5 (28)	13 (72)

Table 2: Correlation of PSCA expression with clinical stage

Tumor stage	Intensity × frequency	
	0-6 (%)	9 (%)
≤B	27 (67.5)	13 (32.5)
≥C	2 (25)	6 (75)

terstained with hematoxylin to localize the hybridization signals. Sections hybridized with the sense control probes routinely did not show any specific hybridization signal above background. All slides were hybridized with PBS to substitute for the probes as a negative control.

#### Scoring methods

To determine the correlation between the results of PSCA immunostaining and mRNA *in situ* hybridization, the same scoring manners are taken in the present study for PSCA protein staining by IHC and PSCA mRNA staining by ISH. Each slide was read and scored by two independently experienced urological pathologists using Olympus BX-41 light microscopes. The evaluation was done in a blinded fashion. For each section, five areas of similar grade were analyzed semiquantitatively for the fraction of cells staining. Fifty percent of specimens were randomly chosen and rescored to determine the degree of interobserver and intraobserver concordance. There was greater than 95% intra- and interobserver agreement.

The intensity of PSCA expression evaluated microscopically was graded on a scale of 0 to 3+ with 3 being the highest expression observed (0, no staining; 1+, mildly intense; 2+, moderately intense; 3+, severely intense). The staining density was quantified as the percentage of cells staining positive for PSCA with the primary antibody or hybridization probe, as follows: 0 = no staining; 1 = positive staining in <25% of the sample; 2 = positive staining in 25%-50% of the sample; 3 = positive staining in >50%

of the sample. Intensity score (0 to 3+) was multiplied by the density score (0-3) to give an overall score of 0-9 [1,5]. In this way, we were able to differentiate specimens that may have had focal areas of increased staining from those that had diffuse areas of increased staining [6]. The overall score for each specimen was then categorically assigned to one of the following groups: 0 score, negative expression; 1-2 scores, weak expression; 3-6 scores, moderate expression; 9 score, strong expression.

#### Statistical analysis

Intensity and density of PSCA protein and mRNA expression in BPH, PIN and Pca tissues were compared using the Chi-square and Student's *t*-test. Univariate associations between PSCA expression and Gleason score, clinical stage and progression to androgen-independence were calculated using Fisher's Exact Test. For all analyses, *p* < 0.05 was considered statistically significant.

#### Results

##### PSCA expression in BPH

In general, PSCA protein and mRNA were expressed weakly in individual samples of BPH. Some areas of prostate expressed weak levels (composite score 1-2), whereas other areas were completely negative (composite score 0). Four cases (20%) of BPH had moderate expression of PSCA protein and mRNA (composite score 4-6) by IHC and ISH. In 2/20 (10%) BPH specimens, PSCA mRNA expression was moderate (composite score 3-6), but PSCA protein expression was weak (composite score

2) in one and negative (composite score 0) in the other. PSCA expression was localized to the basal and secretory epithelial cells, and prostatic stroma was almost negative staining for PSCA protein and mRNA in all cases examined.

#### **PSCA expression in PIN**

In this study, we detected weak or negative expression of PSCA protein and mRNA ( $\leq 2$  scores) in 7 of 9 (77.8%) low grade PIN and in 2 of 11 (18.2%) HGPIN, and moderate expression (3–6 scores) in the rest 2 low grade PIN and 5 of 11 (45.5%) HGPIN. One HGPIN with moderate PSCA mRNA expression (6 score) was found weak staining for PSCA protein (2 score) by IHC. Strong PSCA protein and mRNA expression (9 score) were detected in the remaining 3 of 11 (27.3%) HGPIN. There was a statistically significant difference of PSCA protein and mRNA expression levels observed between HGPIN and BPH ( $p < 0.05$ ), but no statistical difference reached between low grade PIN and BPH ( $p > 0.05$ ).

#### **PSCA expression in Pca**

In order to determine if PSCA protein and mRNA can be detected in prostate cancers and if PSCA expression levels are increased in malignant compared with benign glands, forty-eight paraffin-embedded Pca specimens were analysed by IHC and ISH. It was shown that 19 of 48 (39.6%) Pca samples stained very strongly for PSCA protein and mRNA with a score of 9 and another 21 (43.8%) specimens displayed moderate staining with scores of 4–6 (Figure 1). In addition, 4 specimens with moderate to strong PSCA mRNA expression (scores of 4–9) had weak protein staining (a score of 2) by IHC analyses. Overall, Pca expressed a significantly higher level of PSCA protein and mRNA than any other specimen category in this study ( $p < 0.05$ , compared with BPH and PIN respectively). The result demonstrates that PSCA protein and mRNA are overexpressed by a majority of human Pca.

#### **Correlation of PSCA expression with Gleason score in Pca**

Using the semi-quantitative scoring method as described in Materials and Methods, we compared the expression level of PSCA protein and mRNA with Gleason grade of Pca, as shown in Table 1. Prostate adenocarcinomas were graded by Gleason score as 2–4 scores = well-differentiation, 5–7 scores = moderate-differentiation and 8–10 scores = poor-differentiation [7]. Seventy-two percent of Gleason scores 8–10 prostate cancers had very strong staining of PSCA compared to 21% with Gleason scores 5–7 and 17% with 2–4 respectively, demonstrating that poorly differentiated Pca had significantly stronger expression of PSCA protein and mRNA than moderately and well differentiated tumors ( $p < 0.05$ ). As depicted in Figure 1, IHC and ISH analyses showed that PSCA protein and mRNA expression in several cases of poorly differen-

tiated Pca were particularly prominent, with more intense and uniform staining. The results indicate that PSCA expression increases significantly with higher tumor grade in human Pca.

#### **Correlation of PSCA expression with clinical stage in Pca**

With regards to PSCA expression in every stage of Pca, we showed the results in Table 2. Seventy-five percent of locally advanced and node positive cancers (i.e. C-D stages) expressed statistically high levels of PSCA versus 32.5% that were organ confined (i.e. A-B stages) ( $p < 0.05$ ). The data demonstrate that PSCA expression increases significantly with advanced tumor stage in human Pca.

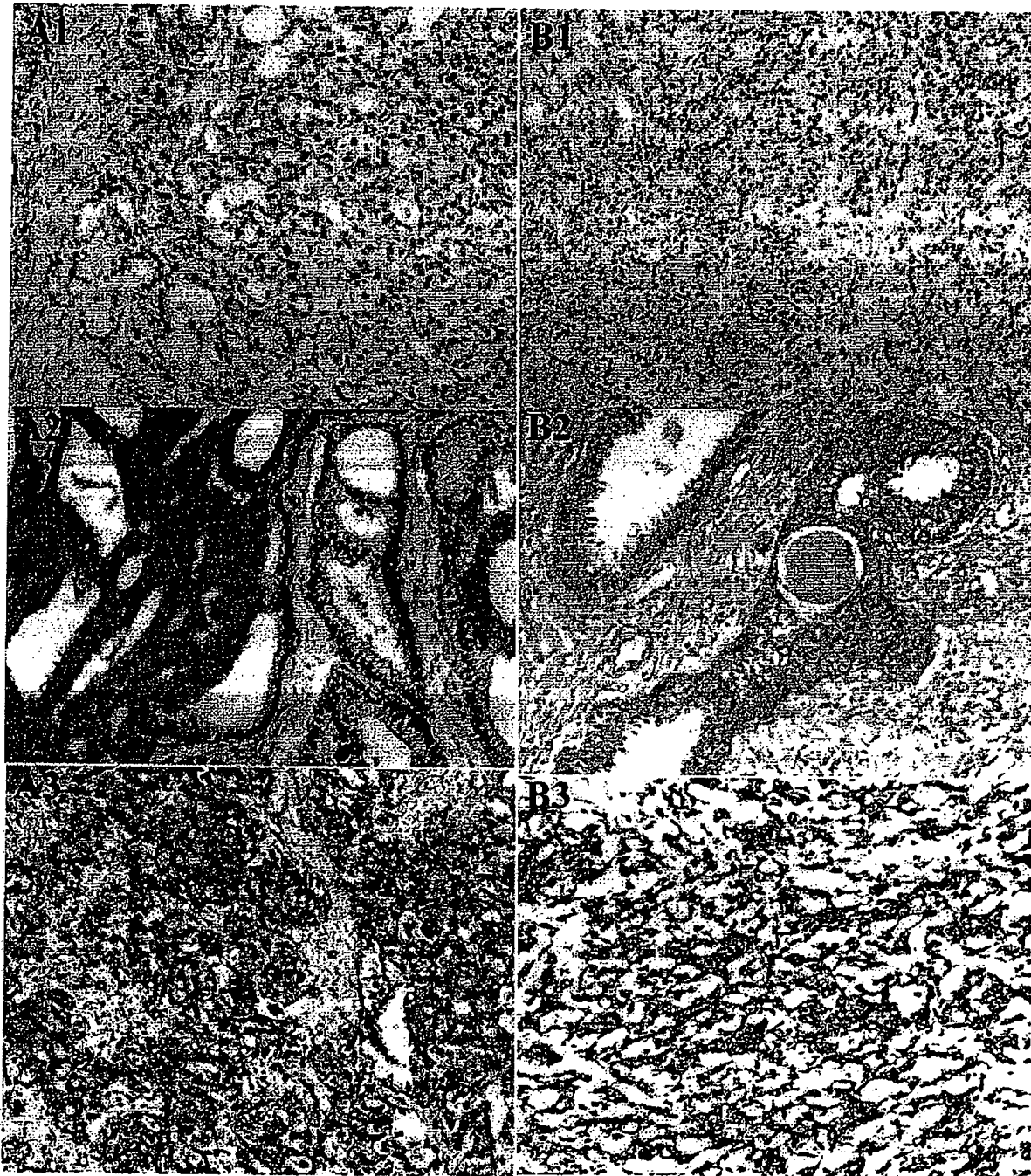
#### **Correlation of PSCA expression with androgen-independent progression of Pca**

All 9 specimens of androgen-independent prostate cancers stained positive for PSCA protein and mRNA. Eight specimens were obtained from patients managed prior to androgen ablation therapy. Seven of eight (87.5%) of these androgen-independent prostate cancers were in the strongest staining category (score = 9), compared with three out of eight (37.5%) of patients with androgen-dependent cancers ( $p < 0.05$ ). The results demonstrate that PSCA expression increases significantly with progression to androgen-independence of human Pca.

It is evident from the results above that within a majority of human prostate cancers the level of PSCA protein and mRNA expression correlates significantly with increasing grade, worsening stage and progression to androgen-independence.

#### **Correlation of PSCA immunostaining and mRNA in situ hybridization**

In all 88 specimens surveyed herein, we compared the results of PSCA IHC staining with mRNA ISH analysis. Positive staining areas and its intensity and density scores evaluated by IHC were identical to those seen by ISH in 79 of 88 (89.8%) specimens (18/20 BPH, 19/20 PIN and 42/48 Pca respectively). Importantly, 27/27 samples with PSCA mRNA composite scores of 0–2, 32/36 samples with scores of 3–6 and 22/24 samples with a score of 9 also had PSCA protein expression scores of 0–2, 3–6 and 9 respectively. However, in 5 samples with PSCA mRNA overall scores of 3–6 and in 2 with scores of 9 there were less or negative PSCA protein expression (i.e. scores of 0–4), suggesting that this may reflect posttranscriptional modification of PSCA or that the epitopes recognized by PSCA mAb may be obscured in some cancers. The data demonstrate that the results of PSCA immunostaining were consistent with those of mRNA ISH analysis, showing a high degree of correlation between PSCA protein and mRNA expression.



**Figure 1**

Representatives of PSCA IHC and ISH staining in Pca (A. IHC staining, B. ISH staining,  $\times 200$  magnification). A<sub>1</sub>, B<sub>1</sub>: negative control of IHC and ISH. PBS replacing the primary antibody (A<sub>1</sub>) and hybridization with a sense PSCA probe (B<sub>1</sub>) showed no background staining. A<sub>2</sub>, B<sub>2</sub>: a moderately differentiated Pca (Gleason score = 3+3 = 6) with moderate staining (composite score = 6) in all malignant cells; A<sub>2</sub>: IHC shows not only cell surface but also apparent cytoplasmic staining of PSCA protein. A<sub>3</sub>, B<sub>3</sub>: a poorly differentiated Pca (Gleason score = 4+4 = 8) with very strong staining (composite score = 9) in all malignant cells.

### Discussion

PSCA is homologous to a group of cell surface proteins that mark the earliest phase of hematopoietic development. PSCA mRNA expression is prostate-specific in normal male tissues and is highly up-regulated in both androgen-dependent and-independent Pca xenografts (LAPC-4 tumors). We hypothesize that PSCA may play a role in Pca tumorigenesis and progression, and may serve as a target for Pca diagnosis and treatment. In this study, IHC and ISH showed that in general there were weak or absent PSCA protein and mRNA expression in BPH and low grade PIN tissues. However, PSCA protein and mRNA are widely expressed in HGPIN, the putative precursor of invasive Pca, suggesting that up-regulation of PSCA is an early event in prostate carcinogenesis. Recently, Reiter RE et al [1], using ISH analysis, reported that 97 of 118 (82%) HGPIN specimens stained strongly positive for PSCA mRNA. A very similar finding was seen on mouse PSCA (mPSCA) expression in mouse HGPIN tissues by Tran C. P et al [8]. These data suggest that PSCA may be a new marker associated with transformation of prostate cells and tumorigenesis.

We observed that PSCA protein and mRNA are highly expressed in a large percentage of human prostate cancers, including advanced, poorly differentiated, androgen-independent and metastatic cases. Fluorescence-activated cell sorting and confocal/ immunofluorescent studies demonstrated cell surface expression of PSCA protein in Pca cells [9]. Our IHC expression analysis of PSCA shows not only cell surface but also apparent cytoplasmic staining of PSCA protein in Pca specimens (Figure 1). One possible explanation for this is that anti-PSCA antibody can recognize PSCA peptide precursors that reside in the cytoplasm. Also, it is possible that the positive staining that appears in the cytoplasm is actually from the overlying cell membrane [5]. These data seem to indicate that PSCA is a novel cell surface marker for human Pca.

Our results show that elevated level of PSCA expression correlates with high grade (i.e. poor differentiation), increased tumor stage and progression to androgen-independence of Pca. These findings support the original IHC analyses by Gu Z et al [9], who reported that PSCA protein expressed in 94% of primary Pca and the intensity of PSCA protein expression increased with tumor grade, stage and progression to androgen-independence. Our results also collaborate the recent work of Han KR et al [10], in which the significant association between high PSCA expression and adverse prognostic features such as high Gleason score, seminal vesicle invasion and capsular involvement in Pca was found. It is suggested that PSCA overexpression may be an adverse predictor for recurrence, clinical progression or survival of Pca. Hara H et al [11] used RT-PCR detection of PSA, PSMA and PSCA in 1

ml of peripheral blood to evaluate Pca patients with poor prognosis. The results showed that among 58 Pca patients, each PCR indicated the prognostic value in the hierarchy of PSCA>PSA>PSMA RT-PCR, and extraprostatic cases with positive PSCA PCR indicated lower disease-progression-free survival than those with negative PSCA PCR, demonstrating that PSCA can be used as a prognostic factor. Dubey P et al [12] reported that elevated numbers of PSCA + cells correlate positively with the onset and development of prostate carcinoma over a long time span in the prostates of the TRAMP and PTEN +/- models compared with its normal prostates. Taken together with our present findings, in which PSCA is overexpressed from HGPIN to almost frank carcinoma, it is reasonable and possible to use increased PSCA expression level or increased numbers of PSCA-positive cells in the prostate samples as a prognostic marker to predict the potential onset of this cancer. These data raise the possibility that PSCA may have diagnostic utility or clinical prognostic value in human Pca.

The cause of PSCA overexpression in Pca is not known. One possible mechanism is that it may result from PSCA gene amplification. In humans, PSCA is located on chromosome 8q24.2 [1], which is often amplified in metastatic and recurrent Pca and considered to indicate a poor prognosis [13-15]. Interestingly, PSCA is in close proximity to the c-myc oncogene, which is amplified in >20% of recurrent and metastatic prostate cancers [16,17]. Reiter RE et al [18] reported that PSCA and MYC gene copy numbers were co-amplified in 25% of tumors (five out of twenty), demonstrating that PSCA overexpression is associated with PSCA and MYC coamplification in Pca. Gu Z et al [9] recently reported that in 102 specimens available to compare the results of PSCA immunostaining with their previous mRNA ISH analysis, 92 (90.2%) had identically positive areas of PSCA protein and mRNA expression. Taken together with our findings, in which we detected moderate to strong expression of PSCA protein and mRNA in 34 of 40 (85%) Pca specimens examined simultaneously by IHC and ISH analyses, it is demonstrated that PSCA protein and mRNA overexpressed in human Pca, and that the increased protein level of PSCA was resulted from the upregulated transcription of its mRNA.

At present, the regulation mechanisms of human PSCA expression and its biological function are yet to be elucidated. PSCA expression may be regulated by multiple factors [18]. Watabe T et al [19] reported that transcriptional control is a major component regulating PSCA expression levels. In addition, induction of PSCA expression may be regulated or mediated through cell-cell contact and protein kinase C (PKC) [20]. Homologues of PSCA have diverse activities, and have themselves been involved in



carcinogenesis. Signalling through SCA-2 has been demonstrated to prevent apoptosis in immature thymocytes [21]. Thy-1 is involved in T cell activation and transduces signals through src-like tyrosine kinases [22]. Ly-6 genes have been implicated both in tumorigenesis and in cell-cell adhesion [23-25]. Cell-cell or cell-matrix interaction is critical for local tumor growth and spread to distal sites. From its restricted expression in basal cells of normal prostate and its homology to SCA-2, PSCA may play a role in stem/progenitor cell function, such as self-renewal (i.e. anti-apoptosis) and/or proliferation [1]. Taken together with the results in the present study, we speculate that PSCA may play a role in tumorigenesis and clinical progression of Pca through affecting cell transformation and proliferation. From our results, it is also suggested that PSCA as a new cell surface antigen may have a number of potential uses in the diagnosis, therapy and clinical prognosis of human Pca. PSCA overexpression in prostate biopsies could be used to identify patients at high risk to develop recurrent or metastatic disease, and to discriminate cancers from normal glands in prostatectomy samples. Similarly, the detection of PSCA-overexpressing cells in bone marrow or peripheral blood may identify and predict metastatic progression better than current assays, which identify only PSA-positive or PSMA-positive prostate cells.

In summary, we have shown in this study that PSCA protein and mRNA are maintained in expression from HGPIN through all stages of Pca in a majority of cases, which may be associated with prostate carcinogenesis and correlate positively with high tumor grade (poor cell differentiation), advanced stage and androgen-independent progression. PSCA protein overexpression is due to the upregulation of its mRNA transcription. The results suggest that PSCA may be a promising molecular marker for the clinical prognosis of human Pca and a valuable target for diagnosis and therapy of this tumor.

### Competing interests

None declared.

### References

- Reiter RE, Gu Z, Watabe T, Thomas G, Szigeti K, David E, Wahl M, Nisitani S, Yamashiro J, Le Beau MM, Loda M, Witte ON: Prostate stem cell antigen: a cell surface marker overexpressed in prostate cancer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1998, **95**:1735-1740.
- Gleason DF: Histologic grading and clinical staging of prostatic carcinoma. In: *Urologic Pathology: The Prostate* Edited by: Tannebaum M. Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger; 1977:171-197.
- Brawer MK: Prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia: a premalignant lesion. *Hum Pathol* 1992, **23**:242-248.
- Amin MB, Ro JY, Ayala AC: Prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia: relationship to adenocarcinoma of prostate. *Pathol Annu* 1994, **29**:1-30.
- Amara N, Palapattu GS, Schrage M, Gu Z, Thomas GV, Dorey F, Said J, Reiter RE: Prostate stem cell antigen is overexpressed in human transitional cell carcinoma. *Cancer Res* 2001, **61**:4660-4665.
- Hanas JS, Lerner MR, Lightfoot SA, Raczkowski C, Kastens DJ, Brackert DJ, Postier RG: Expression of the cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor p21 (WAF1/CIP1) and p53 tumor suppressor in dysplastic progression and adenocarcinoma in Barrett esophagus. *Cancer (Phila)* 1999, **86**:756-763.
- Egevad L, Gramfors T, Karlberg L: Prognostic value of the Gleason score in prostate cancer. *BJU Int* 2002, **89**:538-542.
- Tran CP, Lin C, Yamashiro J, Reiter RE: Prostate stem cell antigen is a marker of late intermediate prostate epithelial cells. *Mol Cancer Res* 2002, **1**:113-121.
- Gu Z, Thomas G, Yamashiro J, Shintaku IP, Dorey F, Raitano A, Witte ON, Said JW, Loda M, Reiter RE: Prostate stem cell antigen (PSCA) expression increases with high Gleason score, advanced stage and bone metastasis in prostate cancer. *Oncogene* 2000, **19**:1288-1296.
- Han KR, Seligson DB, Liu X, Horvath S, Shintaku PI, Thomas GV, Said JW, Reiter RE: Prostate stem cell antigen expression is associated with gleason score, seminal vesicle invasion and capsular invasion in prostate cancer. *J Urol* 2004, **171**:1117-1121.
- Hara H, Kasahara T, Kawasaki T, Billim V, Obara K, Takahashi K, Tomita Y: Reverse Transcription-Polymerase Chain Reaction Detection of Prostate-specific Antigen, Prostate-specific Membrane Antigen, and Prostate Stem Cell Antigen in One Milliliter of Peripheral Blood. *Clin Cancer Res* 2002, **8**:1794-1799.
- Dubey P, Wu H, Reiter RE, Witte ON: Alternative pathways to prostate carcinoma activate prostate stem cell antigen expression. *Cancer Res* 2001, **61**:3256-3261.
- Visakorpi T, Kallioniemi AH, Sivanen AC, Hyytinen ER, Karhu R, Tammela T, Isola JJ, Kallioniemi OP: Genetic changes in primary and recurrent prostate cancer by comparative genomic hybridization. *Cancer Res* 1995, **55**:342-347.
- Sato K, Qian J, Slezak JM, Lieber MM, Bostwick DG, Bergstrahl EJ, Jenkins RB: Clinical significance of alterations of chromosome 8 in high-grade, advanced, nonmetastatic prostate carcinoma. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1999, **91**:1574-1580.
- Van Den Berg C, Guan XY, Von Hoff D, Jenkins R, Bittner J, Griffin C, Kallioniemi O, Visakorpi T, McGill J, Herath J, Epstein J, Sarosdy M, Meltzer P, Trent J: DNA sequence amplification in human prostate cancer identified by chromosome microdissection: potential prognostic implications. *Clin Cancer Res* 1995, **1**:11-18.
- Jenkins RB, Qian J, Lieber MM, Bostwick DG: Detection of c-myc oncogene amplification and chromosomal anomalies in metastatic prostatic carcinoma by fluorescence in situ hybridization. *Cancer Res* 1997, **57**:524-531.
- Nupponen NN, Kakkola L, Koivisto P, Visakorpi T: Genetic alterations in hormone-refractory recurrent prostate carcinomas. *Am J Pathol* 1998, **153**:141-148.
- Reiter RE, Sato I, Thomas G, Qian J, Gu Z, Watabe T, Loda M, Jenkins RB: Coamplification of prostate stem cell antigen (PSCA) and MYC in locally advanced prostate cancer. *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 2000, **27**:95-103.
- Watabe T, Lin M, Donjacour AA, Cunha GR, Witte ON, Reiter RE: Growth, regeneration, and tumorigenesis of the prostate activates the PSCA promoter. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2002, **99**:401-406.
- Bahrenberg G, Brauers A, Joost HG, Jakse G: PSCA expression is regulated by phorbol ester and cell adhesion in the bladder carcinoma cell line RT112. *Cancer Lett* 2001, **168**:37-43.
- Noda S, Kosugi A, Saitoh S, Narumiya S, Hamaoka T: Protection from anti-TCR/CD3-induced apoptosis in immature thymocytes by a signal through thymic shared antigen-1/stem cell antigen-2. *J Exp Med* 1996, **183**:2355-2360.
- Thomas PM, Samelson LE: The glycoposphatidylinositol-anchored Thy-1 molecule interacts with the p60fyn protein tyrosine kinase in T cells. *J Biol Chem* 1992, **267**:12317-12322.
- Bamezai A, Rock KL: Overexpressed Ly-6A.2 mediated cell-cell adhesion by binding a ligand expressed on lymphoid cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1995, **92**:4294-4298.
- Katz BZ, Eshel R, Sagl-Assif O, Witz IP: An association between high Ly-6A/E expression on tumor cells and a highly malignant phenotype. *Int J Cancer* 1994, **59**:684-691.
- Brakenhoff RH, Gerretsen M, Knippels EM, van Dijk M, van Essen H, Weghuis DO, Sinke RJ, Snow GB, van Dongen GA: The human E48 antigen, highly homologous to the murine Ly-6 antigen ThB, is a GPI-anchored molecule apparently involved in keratinocyte cell-cell adhesion. *J Cell Biol* 1995, **129**:1677-1689.

## Review

# Translation Initiation in Cancer: A Novel Target for Therapy<sup>1</sup>

Funda Meric<sup>2</sup> and Kelly K. Hunt

Department of Surgical Oncology, The University of Texas M. D. Anderson Cancer Center, Houston, Texas 77030

### Abstract

Translation initiation is regulated in response to nutrient availability and mitogenic stimulation and is coupled with cell cycle progression and cell growth. Several alterations in translational control occur in cancer. Variant mRNA sequences can alter the translational efficiency of individual mRNA molecules, which in turn play a role in cancer biology. Changes in the expression or availability of components of the translational machinery and in the activation of translation through signal transduction pathways can lead to more global changes, such as an increase in the overall rate of protein synthesis and translational activation of the mRNA molecules involved in cell growth and proliferation. We review the basic principles of translational control, the alterations encountered in cancer, and selected therapies targeting translation initiation to help elucidate new therapeutic avenues.

### Introduction

The fundamental principle of molecular therapeutics in cancer is to exploit the differences in gene expression between cancer cells and normal cells. With the advent of cDNA array technology, most efforts have concentrated on identifying differences in gene expression at the level of mRNA, which can be attributable either to DNA amplification or to differences in transcription. Gene expression is quite complicated, however, and is also regulated at the level of mRNA stability, mRNA translation, and protein stability.

The power of translational regulation has been best recognized among developmental biologists, because transcription does not occur in early embryogenesis in eukaryotes. For example, in *Xenopus*, the period of transcriptional quiescence continues until the embryo reaches midblastula transition, the 4000-cell stage. Therefore, all necessary mRNA molecules are transcribed during oogenesis and stockpiled in a translationally inactive, masked form. The mRNA are translationally activated at appropriate times during oocyte maturation, fertilization, and

early embryogenesis and thus, are under strict translational control.

Translation has an established role in cell growth. Basically, an increase in protein synthesis occurs as a consequence of mitogenesis. Until recently, however, little was known about the alterations in mRNA translation in cancer, and much is yet to be discovered about their role in the development and progression of cancer. Here we review the basic principles of translational control, the alterations encountered in cancer, and selected therapies targeting translation initiation to elucidate potential new therapeutic avenues.

### Basic Principles of Translational Control Mechanism of Translation Initiation

Translation initiation is the main step in translational regulation. Translation initiation is a complex process in which the initiator tRNA and the 40S and 60S ribosomal subunits are recruited to the 5' end of a mRNA molecule and assembled by eukaryotic translation initiation factors into an 80S ribosome at the start codon of the mRNA (Fig. 1). The 5' end of eukaryotic mRNA is capped, i.e., contains the cap structure m<sup>7</sup>GpppN (7-methyl-guanosine-triphospho-5'-ribonucleoside). Most translation in eukaryotes occurs in a cap-dependent fashion, i.e., the cap is specifically recognized by the eIF4E,<sup>3</sup> which binds the 5' cap. The eIF4F translation initiation complex is then formed by the assembly of eIF4E, the RNA helicase eIF4A, and eIF4G, a scaffolding protein that mediates the binding of the 40S ribosomal subunit to the mRNA molecule through interaction with the eIF3 protein present on the 40S ribosome. eIF4A and eIF4B participate in melting the secondary structure of the 5' UTR of the mRNA. The 43S initiation complex (40S/eIF2/Met-tRNA/GTP complex) scans the mRNA in a 5'→3' direction until it encounters an AUG start codon. This start codon is then base-paired to the anticodon of initiator tRNA, forming the 48S initiation complex. The initiation factors are then displaced from the 48S complex, and the 60S ribosome joins to form the 80S ribosome.

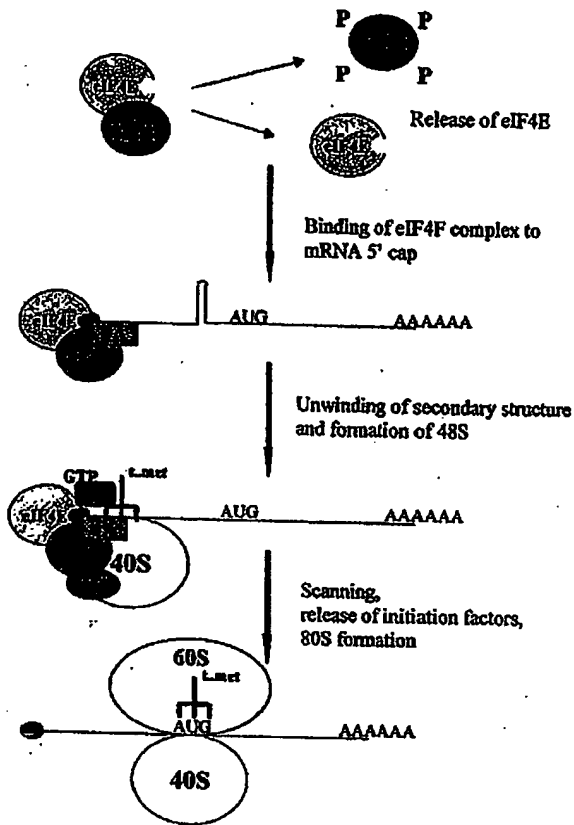
Unlike most eukaryotic translation, translation initiation of certain mRNAs, such as the picornavirus RNA, is cap independent and occurs by internal ribosome entry. This mechanism does not require eIF4E. Either the 43S complex can bind the initiation codon directly through interaction with the IRES in the 5' UTR such as in the encephalomyocarditis virus, or it can

Received 5/16/02; revised 7/12/02; accepted 7/22/02.

<sup>1</sup>F. M. is supported by The University of Texas M. D. Anderson Cancer Center Physician-Scientist Program and by NIH Grant 1K08-CA 91895-01. K. K. H. is supported by Department of Defense Award DAMD-17-97-1-7162.

<sup>2</sup>To whom requests for reprints should be addressed, at Department of Surgical Oncology, Box 444, The University of Texas M. D. Anderson Cancer Center, 1615 Holcombe Boulevard, Houston, TX 77030. Phone: (713) 745-4453; Fax: (713) 745-4926; E-mail: fmeric@mdanderson.org.

<sup>3</sup>The abbreviations used are: eIF4E, eukaryotic initiation factor 4E; UTR, untranslated region; IRES, internal ribosome entry site; 4E-BP1, eukaryotic initiation factor 4E-binding protein 1; S6K, ribosomal p70 S6 kinase; mTOR, mammalian target of rapamycin; ATM, ataxia telangiectasia mutated; PI3K, phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase; PTEN, phosphatase and tensin homolog deleted from chromosome 10; PP2A, protein phosphatase 2A; TGF- $\beta$ 3, transforming growth factor- $\beta$ 3; PAP, poly(A) polymerase; EPA, eicosapentaenoic acid; mda-7, melanoma differentiation-associated gene 7.



**Fig. 1.** Translation initiation in eukaryotes. The 4E-BPs are hyperphosphorylated to release eIF4E so that it can interact with the 5' cap, and the eIF4F initiation complex is assembled. The interaction of poly(A) binding protein with the initiation complex and circularization of the mRNA is not depicted in the diagram. The secondary structure of the 5' UTR is melted, the 40S ribosomal subunit is bound to eIF3, and the ternary complex consisting of eIF2, GTP, and the Met-tRNA are recruited to the mRNA. The ribosome scans the mRNA in a 5'→3' direction until an AUG start codon is found in the appropriate sequence context. The initiation factors are released, and the large ribosomal subunit is recruited.

initially attach to the IRES and then reach the initiation codon by scanning or transfer, as is the case with the poliovirus (1).

### Regulation of Translation Initiation

Translation initiation can be regulated by alterations in the expression or phosphorylation status of the various factors involved. Key components in translational regulation that may provide potential therapeutic targets follow.

**eIF4E.** eIF4E plays a central role in translation regulation. It is the least abundant of the initiation factors and is considered the rate-limiting component for initiation of cap-dependent translation. eIF4E may also be involved in mRNA splicing, mRNA 3' processing, and mRNA nucleocytoplasmic transport (2). eIF4E expression can be increased at the transcriptional level in response to serum or growth factors (3). eIF4E overexpression may cause preferential translation of mRNAs containing excessive secondary structure in their 5' UTR that are normally discriminated against by the trans-

lational machinery and thus are inefficiently translated (4-7). As examples of this, overexpression of eIF4E promotes increased translation of vascular endothelial growth factor, fibroblast growth factor-2, and cyclin D1 (2, 8, 9).

Another mechanism of control is the regulation of eIF4E phosphorylation. eIF4E phosphorylation is mediated by the mitogen-activated protein kinase-interacting kinase 1, which is activated by the mitogen-activated pathway activating extracellular signal-related kinases and the stress-activated pathway acting through p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase (10-13). Several mitogens, such as serum, platelet-derived growth factor, epidermal growth factor, insulin, angiotensin II, src kinase overexpression, and ras overexpression, lead to eIF4E phosphorylation (14). The phosphorylation status of eIF4E is usually correlated with the translational rate and growth status of the cell; however, eIF4E phosphorylation has also been observed in response to some cellular stresses when translational rates actually decrease (15). Thus, further study is needed to understand the effects of eIF4E phosphorylation on eIF4E activity.

Another mechanism of regulation is the alteration of eIF4E availability by the binding of eIF4E to the eIF4E-binding proteins (4E-BP, also known as PHAS-I). 4E-BPs compete with eIF4G for a binding site in eIF4E. The binding of eIF4E to the best characterized eIF4E-binding protein, 4E-BP1, is regulated by 4E-BP1 phosphorylation. Hypophosphorylated 4E-BP1 binds to eIF4E, whereas 4E-BP1 hyperphosphorylation decreases this binding. Insulin, angiotensin, epidermal growth factor, platelet-derived growth factor, hepatocyte growth factor, nerve growth factor, insulin-like growth factors I and II, interleukin 3, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor + steel factor, gastrin, and the adenovirus have all been reported to induce phosphorylation of 4E-BP1 and to decrease the ability of 4E-BP1 to bind eIF4E (15, 16). Conversely, deprivation of nutrients or growth factors results in 4E-BP1 dephosphorylation, an increase in eIF4E binding, and a decrease in cap-dependent translation.

**p70 S6 Kinase.** Phosphorylation of ribosomal 40S protein S6 by S6K is thought to play an important role in translational regulation. S6K  $-/-$  mouse embryonic cells proliferate more slowly than do parental cells, demonstrating that S6K has a positive influence on cell proliferation (17). S6K regulates the translation of a group of mRNAs possessing a 5' terminal oligopyrimidine tract (5' TOP) found at the 5' UTR of ribosomal protein mRNAs and other mRNAs coding for components of the translational machinery. Phosphorylation of S6K is regulated in part based on the availability of nutrients (18, 19) and is stimulated by several growth factors, such as platelet-derived growth factor and insulin-like growth factor I (20).

**eIF2 $\alpha$  Phosphorylation.** The binding of the initiator tRNA to the small ribosomal unit is mediated by translation initiation factor eIF2. Phosphorylation of the  $\alpha$ -subunit of eIF2 prevents formation of the eIF2/GTP/Met-tRNA complex and inhibits global protein synthesis (21, 22). eIF2 $\alpha$  is phosphorylated under a variety of conditions, such as viral infection, nutrient deprivation, heme deprivation, and apoptosis (22). eIF2 $\alpha$  is phosphorylated by heme-regulated inhibitor, nutrient-regulated protein kinase, and the IFN-induced, double-stranded RNA-activated protein kinase (PKR; Ref. 23).

**The mTOR Signaling Pathway.** The macrolide antibiotic rapamycin (Siralimus; Wyeth-Ayerst Research, Collegeville, PA) has been the subject of intensive study because it inhibits signal transduction pathways involved in T-cell activation. The rapamycin-sensitive component of these pathways is mTOR (also called FRAP or RAFT1). mTOR is the mammalian homologue of the yeast TOR proteins that regulate G<sub>1</sub> progression and translation in response to nutrient availability (24). mTOR is a serine-threonine kinase that modulates translation initiation by altering the phosphorylation status of 4E-BP1 and S6K (Fig. 2; Ref. 25).

4E-BP1 is phosphorylated on multiple residues. mTOR phosphorylates the Thr-37 and Thr-46 residues of 4E-BP1 *in vitro* (26); however, phosphorylation at these sites is not associated with a loss of eIF4E binding. Phosphorylation of Thr-37 and Thr-46 is required for subsequent phosphorylation at several COOH-terminal, serum-sensitive sites; a combination of these phosphorylation events appears to be needed to inhibit the binding of 4E-BP1 to eIF4E (25). The product of the ATM gene, p38/MSK1 pathway, and protein kinase C $\alpha$  also play a role in 4E-BP1 phosphorylation (27–29).

S6K and 4E-BP1 are also regulated, in part, by PI3K and its downstream protein kinase Akt. PTEN is a phosphatase that negatively regulates PI3K signaling. PTEN null cells have constitutively active Akt, with increased S6K activity and S6 phosphorylation (30). S6K activity is inhibited both by PI3K inhibitors wortmannin and LY294002 and by mTOR inhibitor rapamycin (24). Akt phosphorylates Ser-2448 in mTOR *in vitro*, and this site is phosphorylated upon Akt activation *in vivo* (31–33). Thus, mTOR is regulated by the PI3K/Akt pathway; however, this does not appear to be the only mode of regulation of mTOR activity. Whether the PI3K pathway also regulates S6K and 4E-BP1 phosphorylation independent of mTOR is controversial.

Interestingly, mTOR autophosphorylation is blocked by wortmannin but not by rapamycin (34). This seeming inconsistency suggests that mTOR-responsive regulation of 4E-BP1 and S6K activity occurs through a mechanism other than intrinsic mTOR kinase activity. An alternate pathway for 4E-BP1 and S6K phosphorylation by mTOR activity is by the inhibition of a phosphatase. Treatment with calyculin A, an inhibitor of phosphatases 1 and 2A, reduces rapamycin-induced dephosphorylation of 4E-BP1 and S6K by rapamycin (35). PP2A interacts with full-length S6K but not with a S6K mutant that is resistant to dephosphorylation resulting from rapamycin. mTOR phosphorylates PP2A *in vitro*; however, how this process alters PP2A activity is not known. These results are consistent with the model that phosphorylation of a phosphatase by mTOR prevents dephosphorylation of 4E-BP1 and S6K, and conversely, that nutrient deprivation and rapamycin block inhibition of the phosphatase by mTOR.

**Polyadenylation.** The poly(A) tail in eukaryotic mRNA is important in enhancing translation initiation and mRNA stability. Polyadenylation plays a key role in regulating gene expression during oogenesis and early embryogenesis. Some mRNA that are translationally inactive in the oocyte are polyadenylated concomitantly with translational activation in oocyte maturation, whereas other mRNAs that are translationally active during oogenesis are deadenylated and trans-

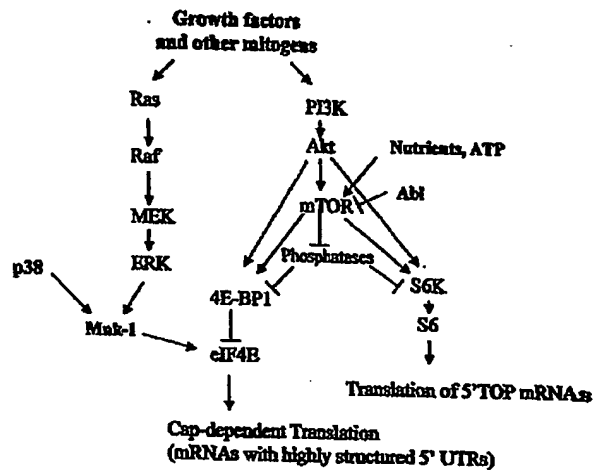


Fig. 2. Regulation of translation initiation by signal transduction pathways. Signaling via p38, extracellular signal-related kinase, PI3K, and mTOR can all activate translation initiation.

lationally silenced (36–38). Thus, control of poly(A) tail synthesis is an important regulatory step in gene expression. The 5' cap and poly(A) tail are thought to function synergistically to regulate mRNA translational efficiency (39, 40).

**RNA Packaging.** Most RNA-binding proteins are assembled on a transcript at the time of transcription, thus determining the translational fate of the transcript (41). A highly conserved family of Y-box proteins is found in cytoplasmic messenger ribonucleoprotein particles, where the proteins are thought to play a role in restricting the recruitment of mRNA to the translational machinery (41–43). The major mRNA-associated protein, YB-1, destabilizes the interaction of eIF4E and the 5' mRNA cap *in vitro*, and overexpression of YB-1 results in translational repression *in vivo* (44). Thus, alterations in RNA packaging can also play an important role in translational regulation.

### Translation Alterations Encountered in Cancer

Three main alterations at the translational level occur in cancer: variations in mRNA sequences that increase or decrease translational efficiency, changes in the expression or availability of components of the translational machinery, and activation of translation through aberrantly activated signal transduction pathways. The first alteration affects the translation of an individual mRNA that may play a role in carcinogenesis. The second and third alterations can lead to more global changes, such as an increase in the overall rate of protein synthesis, and the translational activation of several mRNA species.

### Variations in mRNA Sequence

Variations in mRNA sequence affect the translational efficiency of the transcript. A brief description of these variations and examples of each mechanism follow.

**Mutations.** Mutations in the mRNA sequence, especially in the 5' UTR, can alter its translational efficiency, as seen in the following examples.

**c-myc.** Saito *et al.* proposed that translation of full-length *c-myc* is repressed, whereas in several Burkitt lymphomas that have deletions of the mRNA 5' UTR, translation of *c-myc* is more efficient (45). More recently, it was reported that the 5' UTR of *c-myc* contains an IRES, and thus *c-myc* translation can be initiated by a cap-independent as well as a cap-dependent mechanism (46, 47). In patients with multiple myeloma, a C→T mutation in the *c-myc* IRES was identified (48) and found to cause an enhanced initiation of translation via internal ribosomal entry (49).

**BRCA1.** A somatic point mutation (117 G→C) in position -3 with respect to the start codon of the *BRCA1* gene was identified in a highly aggressive sporadic breast cancer (50). Chimeric constructs consisting of the wild-type or mutated *BRCA1* 5' UTR and a downstream luciferase reporter demonstrated a decrease in the translational efficiency with the 5' UTR mutation.

**Cyclin-dependent Kinase Inhibitor 2A.** Some inherited melanoma kindreds have a G→T transversion at base -34 of cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor-2A, which encodes a cyclin-dependent kinase 4/cyclin-dependent kinase 6 kinase inhibitor important in G<sub>1</sub> checkpoint regulation (51). This mutation gives rise to a novel AUG translation initiation codon, creating an upstream open reading frame that competes for scanning ribosomes and decreases translation from the wild-type AUG.

**Alternate Splicing and Alternate Transcription Start Sites.** Alterations in splicing and alternate transcription sites can lead to variations in 5' UTR sequence, length, and secondary structure, ultimately impacting translational efficiency.

**ATM.** The *ATM* gene has four noncoding exons in its 5' UTR that undergo extensive alternative splicing (52). The contents of 12 different 5' UTRs that show considerable diversity in length and sequence have been identified. These divergent 5' leader sequences play an important role in the translational regulation of the *ATM* gene.

**mdm.** In a subset of tumors, overexpression of the oncoprotein *mdm2* results in enhanced translation of the *mdm2* mRNA. Use of different promoters leads to two *mdm2* transcripts that differ only in their 5' leaders (53). The longer 5' UTR contains two upstream open reading frames, and this mRNA is loaded with ribosomes inefficiently compared with the short 5' UTR.

**BRCA1.** In a normal mammary gland, *BRCA1* mRNA is expressed with a shorter leader sequence (5'UTRa), whereas in sporadic breast cancer tissue, *BRCA1* mRNA is expressed with a longer leader sequence (5' UTRb); the translational efficiency of transcripts containing 5' UTRb is 10 times lower than that of transcripts containing 5' UTRa (54).

**TGF-β3.** *TGF-β3* mRNA includes a 1.1-kb 5' UTR, which exerts an inhibitory effect on translation. Many human breast cancer cell lines contain a novel *TGF-β3* transcript with a 5' UTR that is 870 nucleotides shorter and has a 7-fold greater translational efficiency than the normal *TGF-β3* mRNA (55).

**Alternate Polyadenylation Sites.** Multiple polyadenylation signals leading to the generation of several transcripts with differing 3' UTR have been described for several mRNA species, such as the *RET* proto-oncogene (56), *ATM* gene (52), tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinases-3 (57), *RHOA*

proto-oncogene (58), and calmodulin-I (59). Although the effect of these alternate 3' UTRs on translation is not yet known, they may be important in RNA-protein interactions that affect translational recruitment. The role of these alterations in cancer development and progression is unknown.

### Alterations in the Components of the Translation Machinery

Alterations in the components of translation machinery can take many forms.

**Overexpression of eIF4E.** Overexpression of eIF4E causes malignant transformation in rodent cells (60) and the deregulation of HeLa cell growth (61). Polunovsky *et al.* (62) found that eIF4E overexpression substitutes for serum and individual growth factors in preserving viability of fibroblasts, which suggests that eIF4E can mediate both proliferative and survival signaling.

Elevated levels of eIF4E mRNA have been found in a broad spectrum of transformed cell lines (63). eIF4E levels are elevated in all ductal carcinoma *in situ* specimens and invasive ductal carcinomas, compared with benign breast specimens evaluated with Western blot analysis (64, 65). Preliminary studies suggest that this overexpression is attributable to gene amplification (66).

There are accumulating data suggesting that eIF4E overexpression can be valuable as a prognostic marker. eIF4E overexpression was found in a retrospective study to be a marker of poor prognosis in stages I to III breast carcinoma (67). Verification of the prognostic value of eIF4E in breast cancer is now under way in a prospective trial (67). However, in a different study, eIF4E expression was correlated with the aggressive behavior of non-Hodgkin's lymphomas (68). In a prospective analysis of patients with head and neck cancer, elevated levels of eIF4E in histologically tumor-free surgical margins predicted a significantly increased risk of local-regional recurrence (9). These results all suggest that eIF4E overexpression can be used to select patients who might benefit from more aggressive systemic therapy. Furthermore, the head and neck cancer data suggest that eIF4E overexpression is a field defect and can be used to guide local therapy.

**Alterations in Other Initiation Factors.** Alterations in a number of other initiation factors have been associated with cancer. Overproduction of eIF4G, similar to eIF4E, leads to malignant transformation *in vitro* (69). eIF-2α is found in increased levels in bronchioloalveolar carcinomas of the lung (3). Initiation factor eIF-4A1 is overexpressed in melanoma (70) and hepatocellular carcinoma (71). The p40 subunit of translation initiation factor 3 is amplified and overexpressed in breast and prostate cancer (72), and the eIF3-p110 subunit is overexpressed in testicular seminoma (73). The role that overexpression of these initiation factors plays on the development and progression of cancer, if any, is not known.

**Overexpression of S6K.** S6K is amplified and highly overexpressed in the MCF7 breast cancer cell line, compared with normal mammary epithelium (74). In a study by Barlund *et al.* (74), S6K was amplified in 59 of 668 primary breast tumors, and a statistically significant association was observed between amplification and poor prognosis.

**Overexpression of PAP.** PAP catalyzes 3' poly(A) synthesis. PAP is overexpressed in human cancer cells compared with normal and virally transformed cells (75). PAP enzymatic activity in breast tumors has been correlated with PAP protein levels (76) and, in mammary tumor cytosols, was found to be an independent factor for predicting survival (76). Little is known, however, about how PAP expression or activity affects the translational profile.

**Alterations in RNA-binding Proteins.** Even less is known about alterations in RNA packaging in cancer. Increased expression and nuclear localization of the RNA-binding protein YB-1 are indicators of a poor prognosis for breast cancer (77), non-small cell lung cancer (78), and ovarian cancer (79). However, this effect may be mediated at least in part at the level of transcription, because YB-1 increases chemoresistance by enhancing the transcription of a multidrug resistance gene (80).

#### Activation of Signal Transduction Pathways

Activation of signal transduction pathways by loss of tumor suppressor genes or overexpression of certain tyrosine kinases can contribute to the growth and aggressiveness of tumors. An important mutant in human cancers is the tumor suppressor gene *PTEN*, which leads to the activation of the PI3K/Akt pathway. Activation of PI3K and Akt induces the oncogenic transformation of chicken embryo fibroblasts. The transformed cells show constitutive phosphorylation of S6K and of 4E-BP1 (81). A mutant Akt that retains kinase activity but does not phosphorylate S6K or 4E-BP1 does not transform fibroblasts, which suggests a correlation between the oncogenicity of PI3K and Akt and the phosphorylation of S6K and 4E-BP1 (81).

Several tyrosine kinases such as platelet-derived growth factor, insulin-like growth factor, HER2/neu, and epidermal growth factor receptor are overexpressed in cancer. Because these kinases activate downstream signal transduction pathways known to alter translation initiation, activation of translation is likely to contribute to the growth and aggressiveness of these tumors. Furthermore, the mRNA for many of these kinases themselves are under translational control. For example, HER2/neu mRNA is translationally controlled both by a short upstream open reading frame that represses HER2/neu translation in a cell type-independent manner and by a distinct cell type-dependent mechanism that increases translational efficiency (82). HER2/neu translation is different in transformed and normal cells. Thus, it is possible that alterations at the translational level can in part account for the discrepancy between *HER2/neu* gene amplification detected by fluorescence *in situ* hybridization and protein levels detected by immunohistochemical assays.

#### Translation Targets of Selected Cancer Therapy

Components of the translation machinery and signal pathways involved in the activation of translation initiation represent good targets for cancer therapy.

##### Targeting the mTOR Signaling Pathway: Rapamycin and Tumorstatin

Rapamycin inhibits the proliferation of lymphocytes. It was initially developed as an immunosuppressive drug for organ

transplantation. Rapamycin with FKBP 12 (FK506-binding protein, *M*, 12,000) binds to mTOR to inhibit its function.

Rapamycin causes a small but significant reduction in the initiation rate of protein synthesis (83). It blocks cell growth in part by blocking S6 phosphorylation and selectively suppressing the translation of 5' TOP mRNAs, such as ribosomal proteins, and elongation factors (83–85). Rapamycin also blocks 4E-BP1 phosphorylation and inhibits cap-dependent but not cap-independent translation (17, 86).

The rapamycin-sensitive signal transduction pathway, activated during malignant transformation and cancer progression, is now being studied as a target for cancer therapy (87). Prostate, breast, small cell lung, glioblastoma, melanoma, and T-cell leukemia are among the cancer lines most sensitive to the rapamycin analogue CCI-779 (Wyeth-Ayerst Research; Ref. 87). In rhabdomyosarcoma cell lines, rapamycin is either cytostatic or cytotoxic, depending on the p53 status of the cell; p53 wild-type cells treated with rapamycin arrest in the G<sub>1</sub> phase and maintain their viability, whereas p53 mutant cells accumulate in G<sub>1</sub> and undergo apoptosis (88, 89). In a recently reported study using human primitive neuroectodermal tumor and medulloblastoma models, rapamycin exhibited more cytotoxicity in combination with cisplatin and camptothecin than as a single agent. *In vivo*, CCI-779 delayed growth of xenografts by 160% after 1 week of therapy and 240% after 2 weeks. A single high-dose administration caused a 37% decrease in tumor volume. Growth inhibition *in vivo* was 1.3 times greater, with cisplatin in combination with CCI-779 than with cisplatin alone (90). Thus, preclinical studies suggest that rapamycin analogues are useful as single agents and in combination with chemotherapy.

Rapamycin analogues CCI-779 and RAD001 (Novartis, Basel, Switzerland) are now in clinical trials. Because of the known effect of rapamycin on lymphocyte proliferation, a potential problem with rapamycin analogues is immunosuppression. However, although prolonged immunosuppression can result from rapamycin and CCI-779 administered on continuous-dose schedules, the immunosuppressive effects of rapamycin analogues resolve in ~24 h after therapy (91). The principal toxicities of CCI-779 have included dermatological toxicity, myelosuppression, infection, mucositis, diarrhea, reversible elevations in liver function tests, hyperglycemia, hypokalemia, hypocalcemia, and depression (87, 92–94). Phase II trials of CCI-779 have been conducted in advanced renal cell carcinoma and in stage III/IV breast carcinoma patients who failed with prior chemotherapy. In the results reported in abstract form, although there were no complete responses, partial responses were documented in both renal cell carcinoma and in breast carcinoma (94, 95). Thus, CCI-779 has documented preliminary clinical activity in a previously treated, unselected patient population.

Active investigation is under way into patient selection for mTOR inhibitors. Several studies have found an enhanced efficacy of CCI-779 in *PTEN*-null tumors (30, 86). Another study found that six of eight breast cancer cell lines were responsive to CCI-779, although only two of these lines lacked *PTEN* (97). There was, however, a positive correlation between Akt activation and CCI-779 sensitivity (97). This correlation suggests that activation of the PI3K-Akt pathway,

regardless of whether it is attributable to a PTEN mutation or to overexpression of receptor tyrosine kinases, makes cancer cell amenable to mTOR-directed therapy. In contrast, lower levels of the target of mTOR, 4E-BP1, are associated with rapamycin resistance; thus, a lower 4E-BP1/eIF4E ratio may predict rapamycin resistance (98).

Another mode of activity for rapamycin and its analogues appears to be through inhibition of angiogenesis. This activity may be both through direct inhibition of endothelial cell proliferation as a result of mTOR inhibition in these cells or by inhibition of translation of such proangiogenic factors as vascular endothelial growth factor in tumor cells (99, 100).

The angiogenesis inhibitor tumstatin, another anticancer drug currently under study, was also found recently to inhibit translation in endothelial cells (101). Through a requisite interaction with integrin, tumstatin inhibits activation of the PI3K/Akt pathway and mTOR in endothelial cells and prevents dissociation of eIF4E from 4E-BP1, thereby inhibiting cap-dependent translation. These findings suggest that endothelial cells are especially sensitive to therapies targeting the mTOR-signaling pathway.

#### Targeting eIF2 $\alpha$ : EPA, Clotrimazole, mda-7, and Flavonoids

EPA is an n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acid found in the fish-based diets of populations having a low incidence of cancer (102). EPA inhibits the proliferation of cancer cells (103), as well as in animal models (104, 105). It blocks cell division by inhibiting translation initiation (105). EPA releases Ca<sup>2+</sup> from intracellular stores while inhibiting their refilling, thereby activating PKR. PKR, in turn phosphorylates and inhibits eIF2 $\alpha$ , resulting in the inhibition of protein synthesis at the level of translation initiation. Similarly, clotrimazole, a potent antiproliferative agent *in vitro* and *in vivo*, inhibits cell growth through depletion of Ca<sup>2+</sup> stores, activation of PKR, and phosphorylation of eIF2 $\alpha$  (106). Consequently, clotrimazole preferentially decreases the expression of cyclins A, E, and D1, resulting in blockage of the cell cycle in G<sub>1</sub>.

mda-7 is a novel tumor suppressor gene being developed as a gene therapy agent. Adenoviral transfer of mda-7 (Ad-mda7) induces apoptosis in many cancer cells including breast, colorectal, and lung cancer (107–109). Ad-mda7 also induces and activates PKR, which leads to phosphorylation of eIF2 $\alpha$  and induction of apoptosis (110).

Flavonoids such as genistein and quercetin suppress tumor cell growth. All three mammalian eIF2 $\alpha$  kinases, PKR, heme-regulated inhibitor, and PERK/PEK, are activated by flavonoids, with phosphorylation of eIF2 $\alpha$  and inhibition of protein synthesis (111).

#### Targeting eIF4A and eIF4E: Antisense RNA and Peptides

Antisense expression of eIF4A decreases the proliferation rate of melanoma cells (112). Sequestration of eIF4E by overexpression of 4E-BP1 is proapoptotic and decreases tumorigenicity (113, 114). Reduction of eIF4E with antisense RNA decreases soft agar growth, increases tumor latency, and increases the rates of tumor doubling times (7). Antisense eIF4E RNA treat-

ment also reduces the expression of angiogenic factors (115) and has been proposed as a potential adjuvant therapy for head and neck cancers, particularly when elevated eIF4E is found in surgical margins. Small molecule inhibitors that bind the eIF4G/4E-BP1-binding domain of eIF4E are proapoptotic (116) and are also being actively pursued.

#### Exploiting Selective Translation for Gene Therapy

A different therapeutic approach that takes advantage of the enhanced cap-dependent translation in cancer cells is the use of gene therapy vectors encoding suicide genes with highly structured 5' UTR. These mRNA would thus be at a competitive disadvantage in normal cells and not translate well, whereas in cancer cells, they would translate more efficiently. For example, the introduction of the 5' UTR of fibroblast growth factor-2.5' to the coding sequence of *herpes simplex virus type-1 thymidine kinase* gene, allows for selective translation of *herpes simplex virus type-1 thymidine kinase* gene in breast cancer cell lines compared with normal mammary cell lines and results in selective sensitivity to ganciclovir (117).

#### Toward the Future

Translation is a crucial process in every cell. However, several alterations in translational control occur in cancer. Cancer cells appear to need an aberrantly activated translational state for survival, thus allowing the targeting of translation initiation with surprisingly low toxicity. Components of the translational machinery, such as eIF4E, and signal transduction pathways involved in translation initiation, such as mTOR, represent promising targets for cancer therapy. Inhibitors of the mTOR have already shown some preliminary activity in clinical trials. It is possible that with the development of better predictive markers and better patient selection, response rates to single-agent therapy can be improved. Similar to other cytostatic agents, however, mTOR inhibitors are most likely to achieve clinical utility in combination therapy. In the interim, our increasing understanding of translation initiation and signal transduction pathways promise to lead to the identification of new therapeutic targets in the near future.

#### Acknowledgments

We thank Gayle Nesom from The University of Texas M. D. Anderson Cancer Center Department of Scientific Publications for editorial assistance and Dr. Elmer Bemstam for assistance with manuscript preparation.

#### References

1. Pestova, T. V., Kolupaeva, V. G., Lomakin, I. B., Pilsenko, E. V., Shatsky, I. N., Agol, V. I., and Hellen, C. U. Molecular mechanisms of translation initiation in eukaryotes. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 98: 7029–7038, 2001.
2. Rosenwald, I. B., Kaspar, R., Rousseau, D., Gehrke, L., Leboucq, P., Chen, J. J., Schmidt, E. V., Sonenberg, N., and London, I. M. Eukaryotic translation initiation factor 4E regulates expression of cyclin D1 at transcriptional and post-transcriptional levels. *J. Biol. Chem.*, 270: 21176–21180, 1995.
3. Rosenwald, I. B., Hutzler, M. J., Wang, S., Savas, L., and Fraire, A. E. Expression of eukaryotic translation initiation factors 4E and 2 $\alpha$  is increased frequently in bronchioloalveolar but not in squamous cell carcinomas of the lung. *Cancer (Phila.)*, 92: 2164–2171, 2001.

4. Darveau, A., Pelletier, J., and Sonenberg, N. Differential efficiencies of *in vitro* translation of mouse c-myc transcripts differing in the 5' untranslated region. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **62**: 2315-2319, 1985.
5. Kozak, M. Influences of mRNA secondary structure on initiation by eukaryotic ribosomes. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **63**: 2850-2854, 1986.
6. Koromilas, A. E., Lazartas-Keratzas, A., and Sonenberg, N. mRNAs containing extensive secondary structure in their 5' non-coding region translate efficiently in cells overexpressing initiation factor eIF-4E. *EMBO J.*, **11**: 4159-4158, 1992.
7. Rinker-Schaeffer, C. W., Graff, J. R., De Benedetti, A., Zimmer, S. G., and Rhoads, R. E. Decreasing the level of translation initiation factor 4E with antisense RNA causes reversal of ras-mediated transformation and tumorigenesis of cloned rat embryo fibroblasts. *Int. J. Cancer*, **55**: 841-847, 1993.
8. Kevi, C. G., De Benedetti, A., Payne, D. K., Coe, L. L., Laroux, F. S., and Alexander, J. S. Translational regulation of vascular permeability factor by eukaryotic initiation factor 4E: Implications for tumor angiogenesis. *Int. J. Cancer*, **65**: 785-790, 1998.
9. Nathan, C. A., Franklin, S., Abreo, F. W., Nassar, R., De Benedetti, A., and Glass, J. Analysis of surgical margins with the molecular marker eIF4E: a prognostic factor in patients with head and neck cancer. *J. Clin. Oncol.*, **17**: 2909-2914, 1999.
10. Fukunaga, R., and Hunter, T. MNK1, a new MAP kinase-activated protein kinase, isolated by a novel expression screening method for identifying protein kinase substrates. *EMBO J.*, **16**: 1921-1933, 1997.
11. Wasikiewicz, A. J., Flynn, A., Proud, C. G., and Cooper, J. A. Mitogen-activated protein kinases activate the serine/threonine kinases Mnk1 and Mnk2. *EMBO J.*, **16**: 1909-1920, 1997.
12. Wang, X., Flynn, A., Wasikiewicz, A. J., Webb, B. L., Vries, R. G., Balnes, I. A., Cooper, J. A., and Proud, C. G. The phosphorylation of eukaryotic initiation factor eIF4E in response to phorbol esters, cell stresses, and cytokines is mediated by distinct MAP kinase pathways. *J. Biol. Chem.*, **273**: 9373-9377, 1998.
13. Pyronnet, S., Imataka, H., Gingras, A. C., Fukunaga, R., Hunter, T., and Sonenberg, N. Human eukaryotic translation initiation factor 4G (eIF4G) recruits Mnk1 to phosphorylate eIF4E. *EMBO J.*, **18**: 270-279, 1999.
14. Klein, M., Schepfer, G. C., Voorma, H. O., and Thomas, A. A. Regulation of translation initiation factors by signal transduction. *Eur. J. Biochem.*, **253**: 531-544, 1998.
15. Raught, B., and Gingras, A. C. eIF4E activity is regulated at multiple levels. *Int. J. Biochem. Cell Biol.*, **31**: 43-57, 1999.
16. Takeuchi, K., Shibamoto, S., Nagamine, K., Shigemori, I., Omura, S., Kitamura, N., and Ito, F. Signaling pathways leading to transcription and translation cooperatively regulate the transient increase in expression of c-Fos protein. *J. Biol. Chem.*, **276**: 26077-26083, 2001.
17. Kawasome, H., Paps, P., Webb, S., Keller, G. M., Johnson, G. L., Gelfand, E. W., and Terada, N. Targeted disruption of p70(S6K) defines its role in protein synthesis and rapamycin sensitivity. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **95**: 5033-5038, 1998.
18. Christie, G. R., Hajdich, E., Hundal, H. S., Proud, C. G., and Taylor, P. M. Intracellular sensing of amino acids in *Xenopus laevis* oocytes stimulates p70 S6 kinase in a target of rapamycin-dependent manner. *J. Biol. Chem.*, **277**: 9952-9957, 2002.
19. Hara, K., Yonezawa, K., Weng, Q. P., Kozłowski, M. T., Belham, C., and Avruch, J. Amino acid sufficiency and mTOR regulate p70 S6 kinase and eIF-4E BP1 through a common effector mechanism. *J. Biol. Chem.*, **273**: 14484-14494, 1998.
20. Graves, L. M., Bornfeldt, K. E., Argast, G. M., Krebs, E. G., Kong, X., Lin, T. A., and Lawrence, J. C., Jr. cAMP- and rapamycin-sensitive regulation of the association of eukaryotic initiation factor 4E and the translational regulator PHAS-1 in aortic smooth muscle cells. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **92**: 7222-7226, 1995.
21. Merrick, W. C., and Hershey, J. W. B. The pathway and mechanism of eukaryotic protein synthesis. In: J. W. B. Hershey and M. B. Mathews (eds.), *Translational Control*, pp. 31-69. Cold Spring Harbor, NY: Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, 1986.
22. Kimball, S. R. Eukaryotic initiation factor eIF2. *Int. J. Biochem. Cell Biol.*, **31**: 25-29, 1999.
23. Jagus, R., Joshi, B., and Barber, G. N. PKR, apoptosis and cancer. *Int. J. Biochem. Cell Biol.*, **31**: 123-138, 1999.
24. Thomas, G., and Hall, M. N. TOR signaling and control of cell growth. *Curr. Opin. Cell Biol.*, **9**: 782-787, 1997.
25. Gingras, A. C., Raught, B., and Sonenberg, N. Regulation of translation initiation by FRAP/mTOR. *Genes Dev.*, **15**: 807-828, 2001.
26. Gingras, A. C., Gygi, S. P., Raught, B., Polakiewicz, R. D., Abraham, R. T., Hoekstra, M. F., Aebersold, R., and Sonenberg, N. Regulation of 4E-BP1 phosphorylation: a novel two-step mechanism. *Genes Dev.*, **13**: 1422-1437, 1999.
27. Kumar, V., Pandey, P., Sabatini, D., Kumar, M., Majumder, P. K., Bharti, A., Carmichael, G., Kufe, D., and Kerhanda, S. Functional interaction between FAF1/FRAP/mTOR and protein kinase C $\delta$  in the regulation of cap-dependent initiation of translation. *EMBO J.*, **19**: 1087-1097, 2000.
28. Yang, D. Q., and Kastan, M. B. Participation of ATM in insulin signaling through phosphorylation of eIF-4E-binding protein 1. *Nat. Cell Biol.*, **2**: 893-898, 2000.
29. Liu, G., Zhang, Y., Bode, A. M., Ma, W. Y., and Dong, Z. Phosphorylation of 4E-BP1 is mediated by the p38/MSK1 pathway in response to UVB irradiation. *J. Biol. Chem.*, **277**: 8810-8816, 2002.
30. Neshat, M. S., Mellingerhoff, I. K., Tran, C., Stiles, B., Thomas, G., Petersen, R., Frost, P., Gibbons, J. J., Wu, H., and Sawyers, C. L. Enhanced sensitivity of PTEN-deficient tumors to inhibition of FRAP/mTOR. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **98**: 10314-10319, 2001.
31. Sekulic, A., Hudson, C. C., Homme, J. L., Yin, P., Ottensmeyer, D. M., Karnitz, L. M., and Abraham, R. T. A direct linkage between the phosphoinositide 3-kinase-AKT signaling pathway and the mammalian target of rapamycin in mitogen-stimulated and transformed cells. *Cancer Res.*, **60**: 3504-3513, 2000.
32. Scott, P. H., and Lawrence, J. C., Jr. Attenuation of mammalian target of rapamycin activity by increased cAMP in 3T3-L1 adipocytes. *J. Biol. Chem.*, **273**: 34498-34501, 1998.
33. Reynolds, I. T., Bodine, S. C., and Lawrence, J. C., Jr. Control of Ser2448 phosphorylation in the mammalian target of rapamycin by insulin and skeletal muscle load. *J. Biol. Chem.*, **277**: 17657-17662, 2002.
34. Peterson, R. T., Beal, P. A., Comb, M. J., and Schreiber, S. L. FKBP12-rapamycin-associated protein (FRAP) autophosphorylates at serine 2481 under translationally repressive conditions. *J. Biol. Chem.*, **275**: 7416-7423, 2000.
35. Peterson, R. T., Desai, B. N., Hardwick, J. S., and Schreiber, S. L. Protein phosphatase 2A interacts with the 70-kDa S6 kinase and is activated by inhibition of FKBP12-rapamycin-associated protein. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **96**: 4438-4442, 1999.
36. McGrew, L. L., Dworkin-Rastl, E., Dworkin, M. B., and Richter, J. D. Poly(A) elongation during *Xenopus* oocyte maturation is required for translational recruitment and is mediated by a short sequence element. *Genes Dev.*, **3**: 803-815, 1989.
37. Sheets, M. D., Wu, M., and Wickens, M. Polyadenylation of c-mos mRNA as a control point in *Xenopus* meiotic maturation. *Nature (Lond.)*, **374**: 511-516, 1995.
38. Varnum, S. M., and Womington, W. M. Deadenylation of maternal mRNAs during *Xenopus* oocyte maturation does not require specific cis-sequences: a default mechanism for translational control. *Genes Dev.*, **4**: 2278-2286, 1990.
39. Galle, D. R. The cap and poly(A) tail function synergistically to regulate mRNA translational efficiency. *Genes Dev.*, **5**: 2108-2116, 1991.
40. Sachs, A. B., and Varani, G. Eukaryotic translation initiation: there are (at least) two sides to every story. *Nat. Struct. Biol.*, **7**: 358-361, 2000.
41. Wolffe, A. P., and Meric, F. Coupling transcription to translation: a novel site for the regulation of eukaryotic gene expression. *Int. J. Biochem. Cell Biol.*, **28**: 247-267, 1996.
42. Evdokimova, V. M., Wei, C. L., Sitkov, A. S., Simonenko, P. N., Lazarev, O. A., Vasilenko, K. S., Ustinov, V. A., Hershey, J. W., and Ovchinnikov, L. P. The major protein of messenger ribonucleoprotein particles in somatic cells is a member of the Y-box binding transcription factor family. *J. Biol. Chem.*, **270**: 3188-3192, 1995.
43. Matsumoto, K., Meric, F., and Wolffe, A. P. Translational repression dependent on the interaction of the *Xenopus* Y-box protein FRGY2 with mRNA. Role of the cold shock domain, tail domain, and selective RNA sequence recognition. *J. Biol. Chem.*, **271**: 22706-22712, 1996.



44. Evdokimova, V., Ruzanov, P., Imataka, H., Raught, B., Svitkin, Y., Ovchinnikov, L. P., and Sonenberg, N. The major mRNA-associated protein YB-1 is a potent 5' cap-dependent mRNA stabilizer. *EMBO J.*, 20: 5491-5502, 2001.
45. Saito, H., Hayday, A. C., Wiman, K., Hayward, W. S., and Toneyaga, S. Activation of the *c-myc* gene by translocation: a model for translational control. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 80: 7476-7480, 1983.
46. Nanbru, C., Lafon, I., Audigier, S., Gonsac, M. C., Vagner, S., Huez, G., and Prats, A. C. Alternative translation of the proto-oncogene *c-myc* by an internal ribosome entry site. *J. Biol. Chem.*, 272: 32061-32066, 1997.
47. Stoneley, M., Paulin, F. E., Le Quesne, J. P., Chappell, S. A., and Willis, A. E. *c-Myc* 5' untranslated region contains an internal ribosome entry segment. *Oncogene*, 16: 423-428, 1998.
48. Paulin, F. E., West, M. J., Sullivan, N. F., Whitney, R. L., Lyne, L., and Willis, A. E. Aberrant translational control of the *c-myc* gene in multiple myeloma. *Oncogene*, 13: 505-513, 1996.
49. Chappell, S. A., LeQuesne, J. P., Paulin, F. E., de Schoonebeester, M. L., Stoneley, M., Soutar, R. L., Raiston, S. H., Helfrich, M. H., and Willis, A. E. A mutation in the *c-myc*-IRES leads to enhanced internal ribosome entry in multiple myeloma: a novel mechanism of oncogene de-regulation. *Oncogene*, 18: 4437-4440, 2000.
50. Signori, E., Bagni, C., Papa, S., Primerano, B., Rinaldi, M., Amaldi, F., and Fazio, V. M. A. A somatic mutation in the 5'UTR of *BRCA1* gene in sporadic breast cancer causes down-modulation of translation efficiency. *Oncogene*, 20: 4586-4600, 2001.
51. Liu, L., Diworth, D., Gao, L., Monzon, J., Summers, A., Lessam, N., and Hogg, D. Mutation of the *CDKN2A* 5' UTR creates an aberrant initiation codon and predisposes to melanoma. *Nat. Genet.*, 21: 128-132, 1999.
52. Savitsky, K., Platzer, M., Uziel, T., Gilad, S., Sarti, A., Rosenthal, A., Eroy-Stein, O., Shihoh, Y., and Rotman, G. Ataxia-telangiectasia: structural diversity of untranslated sequences suggests complex post-transcriptional regulation of *ATM* gene expression. *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 25: 1678-1684, 1997.
53. Brown, C. Y., Mize, G. J., Pineda, M., George, D. L., and Morris, D. R. Role of two upstream open reading frames in the translational control of oncogene *mdm2*. *Oncogene*, 18: 5631-5637, 1999.
54. Sobczak, K., and Krzyzosiak, W. J. Structural determinants of *BRCA1* translational regulation. *J. Biol. Chem.*, 277: 17349-17358, 2002.
55. Arrick, B. A., Grendell, R. L., and Griffin, L. A. Enhanced translational efficiency of a novel transforming growth factor  $\beta 3$  mRNA in human breast cancer cells. *Mol. Cell. Biol.*, 14: 619-628, 1994.
56. Myers, S. M., Eng, C., Ponder, B. A., and Mulligan, L. M. Characterization of *RET* proto-oncogene 3' splicing variants and polyadenylation sites: a novel C-terminus for *RET*. *Oncogene*, 11: 2039-2045, 1995.
57. Byrne, J. A., Tomasetto, C., Rouyer, N., Bellocq, J. P., Rio, M. C., and Basset, P. The tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinases-3 gene in breast carcinoma: identification of multiple polyadenylation sites and a stromal pattern of expression. *Mol. Med.*, 1: 418-427, 1995.
58. Moscow, J. A., He, R., Gudas, J. M., and Cowan, K. H. Utilization of multiple polyadenylation signals in the human *RHOA* protooncogene. *Gene (Amst.)*, 144: 229-236, 1994.
59. Senterre-Lesentants, S., Alag, A. S., and Sobel, M. E. Multiple mRNA species are generated by alternate polyadenylation from the human *calmodulin-1* gene. *J. Cell. Biochem.*, 58: 445-454, 1995.
60. Lazaris-Karatzas, A., Montfau, K. S., and Sonenberg, N. Malignant transformation by a eukaryotic initiation factor subunit that binds to mRNA 5' cap. *Nature (Lond.)*, 345: 544-547, 1990.
61. De Benedetti, A., and Rhoads, R. E. Overexpression of eukaryotic protein synthesis initiation factor 4E in HeLa cells results in aberrant growth and morphology. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 87: 8212-8216, 1990.
62. Polunovsky, V. A., Rosenwald, I. B., Tan, A. T., White, J., Chiang, L., Sonenberg, N., and Bitterman, P. B. Translational control of programmed cell death: eukaryotic translation initiation factor 4E blocks apoptosis in growth-factor-restricted fibroblasts with physiologically expressed or de-regulated *Myo*. *Mol. Cell. Biol.*, 16: 6573-6581, 1996.
63. Miyagi, Y., Sugiyama, A., Asai, A., Okazaki, T., Kuchino, Y., and Kerr, S. J. Elevated levels of eukaryotic translation initiation factor eIF-4E mRNA in a broad spectrum of transformed cell lines. *Cancer Lett.*, 91: 247-252, 1993.
64. Kerekatte, V., Smiley, K., Hu, B., Smith, A., Gelder, F., and De Benedetti, A. The proto-oncogene/translation factor *eIF4E*: a survey of its expression in breast carcinomas. *Int. J. Cancer*, 64: 27-31, 1995.
65. Li, B. D., Liu, L., Dawson, M., and De Benedetti, A. Overexpression of eukaryotic initiation factor 4E (eIF4E) in breast carcinoma. *Cancer (Phila.)*, 79: 2385-2390, 1997.
66. Sorrelis, D. L., Black, D. R., Meschonat, C., Rhoads, R., De Benedetti, A., Gao, M., Williams, B. J., and Li, B. D. Detection of *eIF4E* gene amplification in breast cancer by competitive PCR. *Ann. Surg. Oncol.*, 5: 232-237, 1998.
67. Li, B. D., McDonald, J. C., Nasser, R., and De Benedetti, A. Clinical outcome in stage I to III breast carcinoma and *eIF4E* overexpression. *Ann. Surg.*, 227: 756-761; discussion, 761-763, 1998.
68. Wang, S., Rosenwald, I. B., Hutzler, M. J., Pihan, G. A., Savas, L., Chen, J. J., and Woda, B. A. Expression of the eukaryotic translation initiation factors 4E and 2 $\alpha$  in non-Hodgkin's lymphomas. *Am. J. Pathol.*, 155: 247-255, 1999.
69. Fukuchi-Shimogori, T., Ishii, I., Kashiwagi, K., Mashiba, H., Ekdamoto, H., and Igarashi, K. Malignant transformation by overproduction of translation initiation factor *eIF4G*. *Cancer Res.*, 57: 5041-5044, 1997.
70. Eberle, J., Krasagakis, K., and Orfanos, C. E. Translation initiation factor *eIF-4A1* mRNA is consistently overexpressed in human melanoma cells *in vitro*. *Int. J. Cancer*, 71: 396-401, 1997.
71. Shuda, M., Kondoh, N., Tanaka, K., Ryo, A., Wakatsuki, T., Hada, A., Goseki, N., Igarashi, T., Matsuda, K., Aihara, T., Horuchi, S., Shichita, M., Yamamoto, N., and Yamamoto, M. Enhanced expression of translation factor mRNAs in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Anticancer Res.*, 20: 2489-2494, 2000.
72. Nupponen, N. N., Porika, K., Kakkola, L., Tanner, M., Persson, K., Borg, A., Isola, J., and Visakorpi, T. Amplification and overexpression of p40 subunit of eukaryotic translation initiation factor 3 in breast and prostate cancer. *Am. J. Pathol.*, 164: 1777-1783, 1999.
73. Rothe, M., Ko, Y., Albers, P., and Werner, N. Eukaryotic initiation factor 3 p110 mRNA is overexpressed in testicular seminomas. *Am. J. Pathol.*, 157: 1597-1604, 2000.
74. Barlund, M., Forozan, F., Kononen, J., Bubendorf, L., Chen, Y., Bittner, M. L., Thorst, J., Haas, P., Bucher, C., Sauter, G., Kallioniemi, O. P., and Kallioniemi, A. Detecting activation of ribosomal protein S6 kinase by complementary DNA and tissue microarray analysis. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* (Bethesda), 92: 1252-1259, 2000.
75. Topalian, S. L., Kaneko, S., Gonzales, M. I., Bond, G. L., Ward, Y., and Manley, J. L. Identification and functional characterization of neo-poly(A) polymerase, an RNA processing enzyme overexpressed in human tumors. *Mol. Cell. Biol.*, 21: 5614-5623, 2001.
76. Scorilas, A., Telfer, M., Ardavanis, A., Courtis, N., Dimitriadis, E., Yotis, J., Tselipalis, C. M., and Trangas, T. Polyadenylate polymerase enzymatic activity in mammary tumor cytosols: a new independent prognostic marker in primary breast cancer. *Cancer Res.*, 60: 5427-5433, 2000.
77. Janz, M., Harbeck, N., Deitmar, P., Berger, U., Schmidt, A., Jurchott, K., Schmitt, M., and Royer, H. D. Y-box factor YB-1 predicts drug resistance and patient outcome in breast cancer independent of clinically relevant tumor biologic factors HER2, uPA and PAI-1. *Int. J. Cancer*, 97: 278-282, 2002.
78. Shibahara, K., Sugio, K., Osaki, T., Uchiyama, T., Maehara, Y., Kohno, K., Yasumoto, K., Sugimachi, K., and Kuwano, M. Nuclear expression of the Y-box binding protein, YB-1, as a novel marker of disease progression in non-small cell lung cancer. *Clin. Cancer Res.*, 7: 3151-3155, 2001.
79. Kamura, T., Yahata, H., Amada, S., Ogawa, S., Sonoda, T., Kobayashi, H., Mitsumoto, M., Kohno, K., Kuwano, M., and Nakano, H. Is nuclear expression of Y box-binding protein-1 a new prognostic factor in ovarian serous adenocarcinoma? *Cancer (Phila.)*, 85: 2450-2454, 1999.
80. Bargou, R. C., Jurchott, K., Wagener, C., Bergmann, S., Metzner, S., Bommert, K., Mepara, M. Y., Winzer, K. J., Dietel, M., Dorken, B., and Royer, H. D. Nuclear localization and increased levels of transcription factor YB-1 in primary human breast cancers are associated with intrinsic *MDR1* gene expression. *Nat. Med.*, 3: 447-450, 1997.
81. Aoki, M., Blazek, E., and Vogt, P. K. A role of the kinase mTOR in cellular transformation induced by the oncoproteins P3k and Akt. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 98: 136-141, 2001.
82. Ch'ed, S. J., Miller, M. K., and Geballe, A. P. Cell type-dependent and -independent control of HER-2/neu translation. *Int. J. Biochem. Cell Biol.*, 31: 201-213, 1999.

83. Jefferies, H. B., Reinhard, C., Kozma, S. C., and Thomas, G. Rapamycin selectively represses translation of the "polypyrimidine tract" mRNA family. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **91**: 4441-4446, 1994.
84. Terada, N., Patel, H. R., Takase, K., Kohno, K., Naim, A. C., and Gelfand, E. W. Rapamycin selectively inhibits translation of mRNAs encoding elongation factors and ribosomal proteins. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **91**: 11477-11481, 1994.
85. Jefferies, H. B., Fumagalli, S., Dennis, P. B., Reinhard, C., Pearson, R. B., and Thomas, G. Rapamycin suppresses 5'TOP mRNA translation through inhibition of p70s6k. *EMBO J.*, **16**: 3689-3704, 1997.
86. Beretta, L., Gingras, A. G., Svitkin, Y. V., Hall, M. N., and Sonenberg, N. Rapamycin blocks the phosphorylation of 4E-BP1 and inhibits cap-dependent initiation of translation. *EMBO J.*, **15**: 658-664, 1996.
87. Hidalgo, M., and Rowinsky, E. K. The rapamycin-sensitive signal transduction pathway as a target for cancer therapy. *Oncogene*, **19**: 6680-6688, 2000.
88. Hosoi, H., Dilling, M. B., Shikata, T., Liu, L. N., Shu, L., Astumun, R. A., Germain, G. S., Abraham, R. T., and Houghton, P. J. Rapamycin causes poorly reversible inhibition of mTOR and induces p53-independent apoptosis in human rhabdomyosarcoma cells. *Cancer Res.*, **69**: 888-894, 1999.
89. Huang, S., and Houghton, P. J. Resistance to rapamycin: a novel anticancer drug. *Cancer Metastasis Rev.*, **20**: 69-78, 2001.
90. Georger, B., Karr, K., Tang, C. B., Fung, K. M., Powell, B., Sutton, L. N., Phillips, P. C., and Jansz, A. J. Antitumor activity of the rapamycin analog CCI-779 in human primitive neuroectodermal tumor/medulloblastoma models as single agent and in combination chemotherapy. *Cancer Res.*, **61**: 1527-1532, 2001.
91. Gibbons, J. J., Discasani, C., Peterson, R., Hernandez, R., Skotnick, J., and Frost, P. The effect of CCI-779, a novel macrobide anti-tumor agent, on the growth of human tumor cells *in vitro* and in nude mouse xenografts *in vivo*. *Proc. Am. Assoc. Cancer Res.*, **40**: 301, 1999.
92. Hidalgo, M., Rowinsky, E., Erlichman, C., Marshall, B., Marks, R., Edwards, T., and Buckner, J. J. A Phase I and pharmacological study of CCI-779 cyclin inhibitor. *Ann. Oncol.*, **11** (Suppl. 4): 133, 2001.
93. Alexandra, J., Raymond, E., Depenbrock, H., Mekhaldi, S., Angevin, E., Paillet, C., Hanauska, A., Fritsch, J., Feussner, A., and Armand, J. P. CCI-779, a new rapamycin analog, has antitumor activity at doses inducing only mild cutaneous effects and mucositis: early results of an ongoing Phase I study. *Proceedings of the 1999 AACR-NCI-EORTC International Conference, Clin. Cancer Res.*, **5** (Suppl.): 3730a, 1999.
94. Chan, S., Johnston, S., Scheulan, M. E., Moss, K., Morant, A., Latir, A., Feussner, A., Berger, M., and Kirsch, T. First report: a Phase 2 study of the safety and activity of CCI-779 for patients with locally advanced or metastatic breast cancer failing prior chemotherapy. *Proc. Am. Soc. Clin. Oncol.*, **21**: 44a, 2002.
95. Atkins, M. B., Hidalgo, M., Stadler, W., Logan, T., Dutcher, J. P., Hudes, G., Park, Y., Marshall, B., Bori, J., and Dukart, G. A randomized double-blind Phase 2 study of intravenous CCI-779 administered weekly to patients with advanced renal cell carcinoma. *Proc. Am. Soc. Clin. Oncol.*, **21**: 10a, 2002.
96. Smith, S. G., Trinh, C. M., Inge, L. J., Thomas, G., Cloughsey, T. F., Sawyers, C. L., and Mischel, P. S. PTEN expression status predicts glioblastoma cell sensitivity to CCI-779. *Proc. Am. Assoc. Cancer Res.*, **43**: 335, 2002.
97. Yu, K., Toral-Barza, L., Discasani, C., Zhang, W. G., Skotnick, J., Frost, P., and Gibbons, J. J. mTOR, a novel target in breast cancer: the effect of CCI-779, an mTOR inhibitor, in preclinical models of breast cancer. *Endocr. Relat. Cancer*, **8**: 249-258, 2001.
98. Dilling, M. B., Germain, G. S., Dudkin, L., Jayaraman, A. L., Zhang, X., Harwood, F. C., and Houghton, P. J. 4E-binding proteins, the suppressors of eukaryotic initiation factor 4E, are downregulated in cells with acquired or intrinsic resistance to rapamycin. *J. Biol. Chem.*, **277**: 13907-13917, 2002.
99. Guba, M., von Bräunlich, P., Steinbauer, M., Koehl, G., Flegel, S., Hornung, M., Bruns, C. J., Zuelke, C., Farkas, S., Anthuber, M., Jauch, K. W., and Geisler, E. K. Rapamycin inhibits primary and metastatic tumor growth by antiangiogenesis: involvement of vascular endothelial growth factor. *Nat. Med.*, **8**: 128-135, 2002.
100. Lane, H. A., Schell, C., Theuer, A., O'Reilly, T., and Wood, J. Anti-angiogenic activity of RAD001, an orally active anticancer agent. *Proc. Am. Assoc. Cancer Res.*, **43**: 184, 2002.
101. Maeshima, Y., Suchakara, A., Lively, J. C., Ueki, K., Kharbada, S., Kahn, C. R., Sonenberg, N., Hynes, R. O., and Kalluri, R. Tumorstatin, an endothelial cell-specific inhibitor of protein synthesis. *Science (Wash. DC)*, **295**: 140-143, 2002.
102. Caygill, C. P., Charlett, A., and Hill, M. J. Fat, fish, fish oil and cancer. *Br. J. Cancer*, **74**: 159-164, 1996.
103. Falconer, J. S., Ross, J. A., Fearon, K. C., Hawkins, R. A., O'Flordain, M. G., and Carter, D. C. Effect of eicosapentaenoic acid and other fatty acids on the growth *in vitro* of human pancreatic cancer cell lines. *Br. J. Cancer*, **69**: 826-832, 1994.
104. Noguchi, M., Minami, M., Yagasaki, R., Kinoshita, K., Earashi, M., Kitagawa, H., Tanja, T., and Miyazaki, I. Chemoprevention of DMBA-induced mammary carcinogenesis in rats by low-dose EPA and DHA. *Br. J. Cancer*, **75**: 349-353, 1997.
105. Palakurthi, S. S., Fluckiger, R., Aktas, H., Changolkar, A. K., Shahsafaei, A., Harnett, S., Kilo, E., and Halperin, J. A. Inhibition of translation initiation mediates the anticancer effect of the n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acid eicosapentaenoic acid. *Cancer Res.*, **60**: 2919-2925, 2000.
106. Aktas, H., Fluckiger, R., Acosta, J. A., Savage, J. M., Palakurthi, S. S., and Halperin, J. A. Depletion of intracellular Ca<sup>2+</sup> stores, phosphorylation of eIF2 $\alpha$ , and sustained inhibition of translation initiation mediate the anticancer effects of clotrimazole. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **95**: 8260-8265, 1998.
107. Mhashilkar, A. M., Schrock, R. D., Hindl, M., Liao, J., Sieger, K., Kourouma, F., Zou-Yang, X. H., Onishi, E., Takh, O., Vedvick, T. S., Fanger, G., Stewart, L., Watson, G. J., Snary, D., Fisher, P. B., Saeki, T., Roth, J. A., Ramesh, R., and Chada, S. Melanoma differentiation associated gene-7 (*mda-7*): a novel anti-tumor gene for cancer gene therapy. *Mol. Med.*, **7**: 271-282, 2001.
108. Su, Z. Z., Madireddi, M. T., Lin, J. J., Young, C. S., Kitada, S., Reed, J. C., Goldstein, N. I., and Fisher, P. B. The cancer growth suppressor gene *mda-7* selectively induces apoptosis in human breast cancer cells and inhibits tumor growth in nude mice. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **95**: 14400-14405, 1998.
109. Saeki, T., Mhashilkar, A., Chada, S., Branch, C., Roth, J. A., and Ramesh, R. Tumor-suppressive effects by adenovirus-mediated *mda-7* gene transfer in non-small cell lung cancer cell *in vitro*. *Gene Ther.*, **7**: 2051-2057, 2000.
110. Pataer, A., Vorburgen, S. A., Barber, G. N., Chada, S., Mhashilkar, A. M., Zou-Yang, H., Stewart, A. L., Balachandran, S., Roth, J. A., Hunt, K. K., and Swisher, S. G. Adenoviral transfer of the melanoma differentiation-associated gene 7 (*mda7*) induces apoptosis of lung cancer cells via up-regulation of the double-stranded RNA-dependent protein kinase (PKR). *Cancer Res.*, **62**: 2239-2243, 2002.
111. Ito, T., Warnken, S. P., and May, W. S. Protein synthesis inhibition by flavonoids: roles of eukaryotic initiation factor 2 $\alpha$  kinases. *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.*, **255**: 589-594, 1999.
112. Eberle, J., Fecker, L. F., Bittner, J. U., Orfanos, C. E., and Gellen, C. G. Decreased proliferation of human melanoma cell lines caused by antisense RNA against translation factor eIF-4A1. *Br. J. Cancer*, **86**: 1957-1962, 2002.
113. Polunovsky, V. A., Gingras, A. C., Sonenberg, N., Peterson, M., Tan, A., Rubins, J. B., Manivel, J. C., and Bitterman, P. B. Translational control of the antiapoptotic function of Ras. *J. Biol. Chem.*, **275**: 24778-24780, 2000.
114. D'Cunha, J., Kratzke, M. G., Alter, M. D., Polunovsky, V. A., Bitterman, P. B., and Kratzke, R. A. Over-expression of the translational repressor 4E-BP1 inhibits NSCLC tumorigenicity *in vivo*. *Proc. Am. Assoc. Cancer Res.*, **43**: 816-817, 2002.
115. DeFatta, R. J., Nathan, C. A., and De Benedetti, A. Antisense RNA to eIF4E suppresses oncogenic properties of a head and neck squamous cell carcinoma cell line. *Laryngoscope*, **110**: 928-933, 2000.
116. Herbert, T. P., Fahraeus, R., Prescott, A., Lane, D. P., and Proud, C. G. Rapid induction of apoptosis mediated by peptides that bind initiation factor eIF4E. *Curr. Biol.*, **10**: 783-796, 2000.
117. DeFatta, R. J., Li, Y., and De Benedetti, A. Selective killing of cancer cells based on translational control of a suicide gene. *Cancer Gene Ther.*, **9**: 573-578, 2002.

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

Applicant : Ashkenazi et al.

App. No. : 09/903,925

Filed : July 11, 2001

For : **SECRETED AND  
TRANSMEMBRANE  
POLYPEPTIDES AND NUCLEIC  
ACIDS ENCODING THE SAME**

Examiner : Hamud, Fozia M

Group Art Unit 1647

CERTIFICATE OF EXPRESS MAILING

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail in an envelope addressed to Commissioner of Patents, Washington D.C. 20231 on:

(Date)

Commissioner of Patents  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

**DECLARATION OF AVI ASHKENAZI, Ph.D UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.132**

I, Avi Ashkenazi, Ph.D. declare and say as follows: -

1. I am Director and Staff Scientist at the Molecular Oncology Department of Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco, CA 94080.
2. I joined Genentech in 1988 as a postdoctoral fellow. Since then, I have investigated a variety of cellular signal transduction mechanisms, including apoptosis, and have developed technologies to modulate such mechanisms as a means of therapeutic intervention in cancer and autoimmune disease. I am currently involved in the investigation of a series of secreted proteins over-expressed in tumors, with the aim to identify useful targets for the development of therapeutic antibodies for cancer treatment.
3. My scientific Curriculum Vitae, including my list of publications, is attached to and forms part of this Declaration (Exhibit A).
4. Gene amplification is a process in which chromosomes undergo changes to contain multiple copies of certain genes that normally exist as a single copy, and is an important factor in the pathophysiology of cancer. Amplification of certain genes (e.g., Myc or Her2/Neu)

gives cancer cells a growth or survival advantage relative to normal cells, and might also provide a mechanism of tumor cell resistance to chemotherapy or radiotherapy.

5. If gene amplification results in over-expression of the mRNA and the corresponding gene product, then it identifies that gene product as a promising target for cancer therapy, for example by the therapeutic antibody approach. Even in the absence of over-expression of the gene product, amplification of a cancer marker gene - as detected, for example, by the reverse transcriptase TaqMan<sup>®</sup> PCR or the fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH) assays - is useful in the diagnosis or classification of cancer, or in predicting or monitoring the efficacy of cancer therapy. An increase in gene copy number can result not only from intrachromosomal changes but also from chromosomal aneuploidy. It is important to understand that detection of gene amplification can be used for cancer diagnosis even if the determination includes measurement of chromosomal aneuploidy. Indeed, as long as a significant difference relative to normal tissue is detected, it is irrelevant if the signal originates from an increase in the number of gene copies per chromosome and/or an abnormal number of chromosomes.

6. I understand that according to the Patent Office, absent data demonstrating that the increased copy number of a gene in certain types of cancer leads to increased expression of its product, gene amplification data are insufficient to provide substantial utility or well established utility for the gene product (the encoded polypeptide), or an antibody specifically binding the encoded polypeptide. However, even when amplification of a cancer marker gene does not result in significant over-expression of the corresponding gene product, this very absence of gene product over-expression still provides significant information for cancer diagnosis and treatment. Thus, if over-expression of the gene product does not parallel gene amplification in certain tumor types but does so in others, then parallel monitoring of gene amplification and gene product over-expression enables more accurate tumor classification and hence better determination of suitable therapy. In addition, absence of over-expression is crucial information for the practicing clinician. If a gene is amplified but the corresponding gene product is not over-expressed, the clinician accordingly will decide not to treat a patient with agents that target that gene product.

7. I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information or belief are believed to be true, and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so

made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

By: Avi Ashkenazi  
Avi Ashkenazi, Ph.D.

Date: 9/15/03

SV 455281 v1  
9/12/03 3:06 PM (39780.7000)

## CURRICULUM VITAE

Avi Ashkenazi

July 2003

### Personal:

Date of birth: 29 November, 1956  
Address: 1456 Tarrytown Street, San Mateo, CA 94402  
Phone: (650) 578-9199 (home); (650) 225-1853 (office)  
Fax: (650) 225-6443 (office)  
Email: aa@gene.com

### Education:

1983: B.S. in Biochemistry, with honors, Hebrew University, Israel  
1986: Ph.D. in Biochemistry, Hebrew University, Israel

### Employment:

1983-1986: Teaching assistant, undergraduate level course in Biochemistry  
1985-1986: Teaching assistant, graduate level course on Signal Transduction  
1986 - 1988: Postdoctoral fellow, Hormone Research Dept., UCSF, and  
Developmental Biology Dept., Genentech, Inc., with J. Ramachandran  
1988 - 1989: Postdoctoral fellow, Molecular Biology Dept., Genentech, Inc.,  
with D. Capon  
1989 - 1993: Scientist, Molecular Biology Dept., Genentech, Inc.  
1994 -1996: Senior Scientist, Molecular Oncology Dept., Genentech, Inc.  
1996-1997: Senior Scientist and Interim director, Molecular Oncology Dept.,  
Genentech, Inc.  
1997-1990: Senior Scientist and preclinical project team leader, Genentech, Inc.  
1999 -2002: Staff Scientist in Molecular Oncology, Genentech, Inc.  
2002-present: Staff Scientist and Director in Molecular Oncology, Genentech, Inc.

### Awards:

1988: First prize, The Boehringer Ingelheim Award

**Editorial:**

Editorial Board Member: *Current Biology*  
Associate Editor, *Clinical Cancer Research*.  
Associate Editor, *Cancer Biology and Therapy*.

**Refereed papers:**

1. Gertler, A., Ashkenazi, A., and Madar, Z. Binding sites for human growth hormone and ovine and bovine prolactins in the mammary gland and liver of the lactating cow. *Mol. Cell. Endocrinol.* **34**, 51-57 (1984).
2. Gertler, A., Shamay, A., Cohen, N., Ashkenazi, A., Friesen, H., Levanon, A., Gorecki, M., Aviv, H., Hadari, D., and Vogel, T. Inhibition of lactogenic activities of ovine prolactin and human growth hormone (hGH) by a novel form of a modified recombinant hGH. *Endocrinology* **118**, 720-726 (1986).
3. Ashkenazi, A., Madar, Z., and Gertler, A. Partial purification and characterization of bovine mammary gland prolactin receptor. *Mol. Cell. Endocrinol.* **50**, 79-87 (1987).
4. Ashkenazi, A., Pines, M., and Gertler, A. Down-regulation of lactogenic hormone receptors in Nb2 lymphoma cells by cholera toxin. *Biochemistry Internat.* **14**, 1065-1072 (1987).
5. Ashkenazi, A., Cohen, R., and Gertler, A. Characterization of lactogen receptors in lactogenic hormone-dependent and independent Nb2 lymphoma cell lines. *FEBS Lett.* **210**, 51-55 (1987).
6. Ashkenazi, A., Vogel, T., Barash, I., Hadari, D., Levanon, A., Gorecki, M., and Gertler, A. Comparative study on-in vitro and in vivo modulation of lactogenic and somatotrophic receptors by native human growth hormone and its modified recombinant analog. *Endocrinology* **121**, 414-419 (1987).
7. Peralta, E., Winslow, J., Peterson, G., Smith, D., Ashkenazi, A., Ramachandran, J., Schimerlik, M., and Capon, D. Primary structure and biochemical properties of an M2 muscarinic receptor. *Science* **236**, 600-605 (1987).
8. Peralta, E., Ashkenazi, A., Winslow, J., Smith, D., Ramachandran, J., and Capon, D. J. Distinct primary structures, ligand-binding properties and tissue-specific expression of four human muscarinic acetylcholine receptors. *EMBO J.* **6**, 3923-3929 (1987).
9. Ashkenazi, A., Winslow, J., Peralta, E., Peterson, G., Schimerlik, M., Capon, D., and Ramachandran, J. An M2 muscarinic receptor subtype coupled to both adenylyl cyclase and phosphoinositide turnover. *Science* **238**, 672-675 (1987).

10. Pines, M., Ashkenazi, A., Cohen-Chapnik, N., Binder, L., and Gertler, A. Inhibition of the proliferation of Nb2 lymphoma cells by femtomolar concentrations of cholera toxin and partial reversal of the effect by 12-o-tetradecanoyl-phorbol-13-acetate. *J. Cell. Biochem.* 37, 119-129 (1988).
11. Peralta, E., Ashkenazi, A., Winslow, J., Ramachandran, J., and Capon, D. Differential regulation of PI hydrolysis and adenylyl cyclase by muscarinic receptor subtypes. *Nature* 334, 434-437 (1988).
12. Ashkenazi, A., Peralta, E., Winslow, J., Ramachandran, J., and Capon, D. Functionally distinct G proteins couple different receptors to PI hydrolysis in the same cell. *Cell* 56, 487-493 (1989).
13. Ashkenazi, A., Ramachandran, J., and Capon, D. Acetylcholine analogue stimulates DNA synthesis in brain-derived cells via specific muscarinic acetylcholine receptor subtypes. *Nature* 340, 146-150 (1989).
14. Lammare, D., Ashkenazi, A., Fleury, S., Smith, D., Sekaly, R., and Capon, D. The MHC-binding and gp120-binding domains of CD4 are distinct and separable. *Science* 245, 743-745 (1989).
15. Ashkenazi, A., Presta, L., Marsters, S., Camerato, T., Rosenthal, K., Fendly, B., and Capon, D. Mapping the CD4 binding site for human immunodeficiency virus type 1 by alanine-scanning mutagenesis. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* 87, 7150-7154 (1990).
16. Chamow, S., Peers, D., Byrn, R., Mulkerrin, M., Harris, R., Wang, W., Bjorkman, P., Capon, D., and Ashkenazi, A. Enzymatic cleavage of a CD4 immunoadhesin generates crystallizable, biologically active Fd-like fragments. *Biochemistry* 29, 9885-9891 (1990).
17. Ashkenazi, A., Smith, D., Marsters, S., Riddle, L., Gregory, T., Ho, D., and Capon, D. Resistance of primary isolates of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 to soluble CD4 is independent of CD4-gp120 binding affinity. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* 88, 7056-7060 (1991).
18. Ashkenazi, A., Marsters, S., Capon, D., Chamow, S., Figari, I., Pennica, D., Goeddel, D., Palladino, M., and Smith, D. Protection against endotoxic shock by a tumor necrosis factor receptor immunoadhesin. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* 88, 10535-10539 (1991).
19. Moore, J., McKeating, J., Huang, Y., Ashkenazi, A., and Ho, D. Virions of primary HIV-1 isolates resistant to sCD4 neutralization differ in sCD4 affinity and glycoprotein gp120 retention from sCD4-sensitive isolates. *J. Virol.* 66, 235-243 (1992).



20. Jin, H., Oksenberg, D., Ashkenazi, A., Peroutka, S., Duncan, A., Rozmahel, R., Yang, Y., Mengod, G., Palacios, J., and O'Dowd, B. Characterization of the human 5-hydroxytryptamine<sub>1B</sub> receptor. *J. Biol. Chem.* **267**, 5735-5738 (1992).
21. Marsters, A., Frutkin, A., Simpson, N., Fendly, B. and Ashkenazi, A. Identification of cysteine-rich domains of the type 1 tumor necrosis receptor involved in ligand binding. *J. Biol. Chem.* **267**, 5747-5750 (1992).
22. Chamow, S., Kogan, T., Peers, D., Hastings, R., Byrn, R., and Ashkenazi, A. Conjugation of sCD4 without loss of biological activity via a novel carbohydrate-directed cross-linking reagent. *J. Biol. Chem.* **267**, 15916-15922 (1992).
23. Oksenberg, D., Marsters, A., O'Dowd, B., Jin, H., Havlik, S., Peroutka, S., and Ashkenazi, A. A single amino-acid difference confers major pharmacologic variation between human and rodent 5-HT<sub>1B</sub> receptors. *Nature* **360**, 161-163 (1992).
24. Haak-Frendscho, M., Marsters, S., Chamow, S., Peers, D., Simpson, N., and Ashkenazi, A. Inhibition of interferon  $\gamma$  by an interferon  $\gamma$  receptor immunoadhesin. *Immunology* **79**, 594-599 (1993).
25. Penica, D., Lam, V., Weber, R., Kohr, W., Basa, L., Spellman, M., Ashkenazi, A., Shire, S., and Goeddel, D. Biochemical characterization of the extracellular domain of the 75-kd tumor necrosis factor receptor. *Biochemistry* **32**, 3131-3138. (1993).
26. Barfod, L., Zheng, Y., Kuang, W., Hart, M., Evans, T., Cerione, R., and Ashkenazi, A. Cloning and expression of a human CDC42 GTPase Activating Protein reveals a functional SH3-binding domain. *J. Biol. Chem.* **268**, 26059-26062 (1993).
27. Chamow, S., Zhang, D., Tan, X., Mhtre, S., Marsters, S., Peers, D., Byrn, R., Ashkenazi, A., and Yunghans, R. A humanized bispecific immunoadhesin-antibody that retargets CD3+ effectors to kill HIV-1-infected cells. *J. Immunol.* **153**, 4268-4280 (1994).
28. Means, R., Krantz, S., Luna, J., Marsters, S., and Ashkenazi, A. Inhibition of murine erythroid colony formation in vitro by iterferon  $\gamma$  and correction by interferon  $\gamma$  receptor immunoadhesin. *Blood* **83**, 911-915 (1994).
29. Haak-Frendscho, M., Marsters, S., Mordenti, J., Gillet, N., Chen, S., and Ashkenazi, A. Inhibition of TNF by a TNF receptor immunoadhesin: comparison with an anti-TNF mAb. *J. Immunol.* **152**, 1347-1353 (1994).

30. Chamow, S., Kogan, T., Venuti, M., Gadek, T., Peers, D., Mordenti, J., Shak, S., and Ashkenazi, A. Modification of CD4 immunoadhesin with monomethoxy-PEG aldehyde via reductive alkylation. *Bioconj. Chem.* **5**, 133-140 (1994).
31. Jin, H., Yang, R., Marsters, S., Bunting, S., Wurm, F., Chamow, S., and Ashkenazi, A. Protection against rat endotoxic shock by p55 tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor immunoadhesin: comparison to anti-TNF monoclonal antibody. *J. Infect. Diseases* **170**, 1323-1326 (1994).
32. Beck, J., Marsters, S., Harris, R., Ashkenazi, A., and Chamow, S. Generation of soluble interleukin-1 receptor from an immunoadhesin by specific cleavage. *Mol. Immunol.* **31**, 1335-1344 (1994).
33. Pitti, B., Marsters, M., Haak-Frendscho, M., Osaka, G., Mordenti, J., Chamow, S., and Ashkenazi, A. Molecular and biological properties of an interleukin-1 receptor immunoadhesin. *Mol. Immunol.* **31**, 1345-1351 (1994).
34. Oksenberg, D., Havlik, S., Peroutka, S., and Ashkenazi, A. The third intracellular loop of the 5-HT<sub>2</sub> receptor specifies effector coupling. *J. Neurochem.* **64**, 1440-1447 (1995).
35. Bach, E., Szabo, S., Dighe, A., Ashkenazi, A., Aguet, M., Murphy, K., and Schreiber, R. Ligand-induced autoregulation of IFN- $\gamma$  receptor  $\beta$  chain expression in T helper cell subsets. *Science* **270**, 1215-1218 (1995).
36. Jin, H., Yang, R., Marsters, S., Ashkenazi, A., Bunting, S., Marra, M., Scott, R., and Baker, J. Protection against endotoxic shock by bactericidal/permeability-increasing protein in rats. *J. Clin. Invest.* **95**, 1947-1952 (1995).
37. Marsters, S., Penica, D., Bach, E., Schreiber, R., and Ashkenazi, A. Interferon  $\gamma$  signals via a high-affinity multisubunit receptor complex that contains two types of polypeptide chain. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* **92**, 5401-5405 (1995).
38. Van Zee, K., Moldawer, L., Oldenburg, H., Thompson, W., Stackpole, S., Montegut, W., Rogy, M., Meschter, C., Gallati, H., Schiller, C., Richter, W., Loetcher, H., Ashkenazi, A., Chamow, S., Wurm, F., Calvano, S., Lowry, S., and Lesslauer, W. Protection against lethal E. coli bacteremia in baboons by pretreatment with a 55-kDa TNF receptor-Ig fusion protein, Ro45-2081. *J. Immunol.* **156**, 2221-2230 (1996).
39. Pitti, R., Marsters, S., Ruppert, S., Donahue, C., Moore, A., and Ashkenazi, A. Induction of apoptosis by Apo-2 Ligand, a new member of the tumor necrosis factor cytokine family. *J. Biol. Chem.* **271**, 12687-12690 (1996).

40. Marsters, S., Pitti, R., Donahue, C., Rupert, S., Bauer, K., and Ashkenazi, A. Activation of apoptosis by Apo-2 ligand is independent of FADD but blocked by CrmA. *Curr. Biol.* **6**, 1669-1676 (1996).
41. Marsters, S., Skubatch, M., Gray, C., and Ashkenazi, A. Herpesvirus entry mediator, a novel member of the tumor necrosis factor receptor family, activates the NF- $\kappa$ B and AP-1 transcription factors. *J. Biol. Chem.* **272**, 14029-14032 (1997).
42. Sheridan, J., Marsters, S., Pitti, R., Gurney, A., Skubatch, M., Baldwin, D., Ramakrishnan, L., Gray, C., Baker, K., Wood, W.L., Goddard, A., Godowski, P., and Ashkenazi, A. Control of TRAIL-induced apoptosis by a family of signaling and decoy receptors. *Science* **277**, 818-821 (1997).
43. Marsters, S., Sheridan, J., Pitti, R., Gurney, A., Skubatch, M., Baldwin, D., Huang, A., Yuan, J., Goddard, A., Godowski, P., and Ashkenazi, A. A novel receptor for Apo2L/TRAIL contains a truncated death domain. *Curr. Biol.* **7**, 1003-1006 (1997).
44. Marsters, A., Sheridan, J., Pitti, R., Brush, J., Goddard, A., and Ashkenazi, A. Identification of a ligand for the death-domain-containing receptor Apo3. *Curr. Biol.* **8**, 525-528 (1998).
45. Rieger, J., Naumann, U., Glaser, T., Ashkenazi, A., and Weller, M. Apo2 ligand: a novel weapon against malignant glioma? *FEBS Lett.* **427**, 124-128 (1998).
46. Pender, S., Fell, J., Chamow, S., Ashkenazi, A., and MacDonald, T. A p55 TNF receptor immunoadhesin prevents T cell mediated intestinal injury by inhibiting matrix metalloproteinase production. *J. Immunol.* **160**, 4098-4103 (1998).
47. Pitti, R., Marsters, S., Lawrence, D., Roy, Kischkel, F., M., Dowd, P., Huang, A., Donahue, C., Sherwood, S., Baldwin, D., Godowski, P., Wood, W., Gurney, A., Hillan, K., Cohen, R., Goddard, A., Botstein, D., and Ashkenazi, A. Genomic amplification of a decoy receptor for Fas ligand in lung and colon cancer. *Nature* **396**, 699-703 (1998).
48. Mori, S., Marakami-Mori, K., Nakamura, S., Ashkenazi, A., and Bonavida, B. Sensitization of AIDS Kaposi's sarcoma cells to Apo-2 ligand-induced apoptosis by actinomycin D. *J. Immunol.* **162**, 5616-5623 (1999).
49. Gurney, A., Marsters, S., Huang, A., Pitti, R., Mark, M., Baldwin, D., Gray, A., Dowd, P., Brush, J., Heldens, S., Schow, P., Goddard, A., Wood, W., Baker, K., Godowski, P., and Ashkenazi, A. Identification of a new member of the tumor necrosis factor family and its receptor, a human ortholog of mouse GITR. *Curr. Biol.* **9**, 215-218 (1999).

50. Ashkenazi, A., Pai, R., Fong, S., Leung, S., Lawrence, D., Marsters, S., Blackie, C., Chang, L., McMurtrey, A., Hebert, A., DeForge, L., Khoumenis, I., Lewis, D., Harris, L., Bussiere, J., Koeppen, H., Shahrokhi, Z., and Schwall, R. Safety and anti-tumor activity of recombinant soluble Apo2 ligand. *J. Clin. Invest.* 104, 155-162 (1999).
51. Chuntharapai, A., Gibbs, V., Lu, J., Ow, A., Marsters, S., Ashkenazi, A., De Vos, A., Kim, K.J. Determination of residues involved in ligand binding and signal transmission in the human IFN- $\alpha$  receptor 2. *J. Immunol.* 163, 766-773 (1999).
52. Johnsen, A.-C., Haux, J., Steinkjer, B., Nonstad, U., Egeberg, K., Sundan, A., Ashkenazi, A., and Espevik, T. Regulation of Apo2L/TRAIL expression in NK cells – involvement in NK cell-mediated cytotoxicity. *Cytokine* 11, 664-672 (1999).
53. Roth, W., Isenmann, S., Naumann, U., Kugler, S., Bahr, M., Dichgans, J., Ashkenazi, A., and Weller, M. Eradication of intracranial human malignant glioma xenografts by Apo2L/TRAIL. *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 265, 479-483 (1999).
54. Hymowitz, S.G., Christinger, H.W., Fuh, G., Ultsch, M., O'Connell, M., Kelley, R.F., Ashkenazi, A. and de Vos, A.M. Triggering Cell Death: The Crystal Structure of Apo2L/TRAIL in a Complex with Death Receptor 5. *Molec. Cell* 4, 563-571 (1999).
55. Hymowitz, S.G., O'Connell, M.P., Utsch, M.H., Hurst, A., Totpal, K., Ashkenazi, A., de Vos, A.M., Kelley, R.F. A unique zinc-binding site revealed by a high-resolution X-ray structure of homotrimeric Apo2L/TRAIL. *Biochemistry* 39, 633-640 (2000).
56. Zhou, Q., Fukushima, P., DeGraff, W., Mitchell, J.B., Stetler-Stevenson, M., Ashkenazi, A., and Steeg, P.S. Radiation and the Apo2L/TRAIL apoptotic pathway preferentially inhibit the colonization of premalignant human breast cancer cells overexpressing cyclin D1. *Cancer Res.* 60, 2611-2615 (2000).
57. Kischkel, F.C., Lawrence, D. A., Chuntharapai, A., Schow, P., Kim, J., and Ashkenazi, A. Apo2L/TRAIL-dependent recruitment of endogenous FADD and Caspase-8 to death receptors 4 and 5. *Immunity* 12, 611-620 (2000).
58. Yan, M., Marsters, S.A., Grewal, I.S., Wang, H., \*Ashkenazi, A., and \*Dixit, V.M. Identification of a receptor for BlyS demonstrates a crucial role in humoral immunity. *Nature Immunol.* 1, 37-41 (2000).

59. Marsters, S.A., Yan, M., Pitti, R.M., Haas, P.E., Dixit, V.M., and Ashkenazi, A. Interaction of the TNF homologues BLYS and APRIL with the TNF receptor homologues BCMA and TACI. *Curr. Biol.* 10, 785-788 (2000).
60. Kischkel, F.C., and Ashkenazi, A. Combining enhanced metabolic labeling with immunoblotting to detect interactions of endogenous cellular proteins. *Biotechniques* 29, 506-512 (2000).
61. Lawrence, D., Shahrokh, Z., Marsters, S., Achilles, K., Shih, D. Mounho, B., Hillan, K., Totpal, K. DeForge, L., Schow, P., Hooley, J., Sherwood, S., Pai, R., Leung, S., Khan, L., Gliniak, B., Bussiere, J., Smith, C., Strom, S., Kelley, S., Fox, J., Thomas, D., and Ashkenazi, A. Differential hepatocyte toxicity of recombinant Apo2L/TRAIL versions. *Nature Med.* 7, 383-385 (2001).
62. Chuntharapai, A., Dodge, K., Grimmer, K., Schroeder, K., Marsters, S.A., Koeppen, H., Ashkenazi, A., and Kim, K.J. Isotype-dependent inhibition of tumor growth in vivo by monoclonal antibodies to death receptor 4. *J. Immunol.* 166, 4891-4898 (2001).
63. Pollack, I.F., Erff, M., and Ashkenazi, A. Direct stimulation of apoptotic signaling by soluble Apo2L/tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand leads to selective killing of glioma cells. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 7, 1362-1369 (2001).
64. Wang, H., Marsters, S.A., Baker, T., Chan, B., Lee, W.P., Fu, L., Tumas, D., Yan, M., Dixit, V.M., \*Ashkenazi, A., and \*Grewal, I.S. TACI-ligand interactions are required for T cell activation and collagen-induced arthritis in mice. *Nature Immunol.* 2, 632-637 (2001).
65. Kischkel, F.C., Lawrence, D.A., Tinel, A., Virmani, A., Schow, P., Gazdar, A., Blenis, J., Arnott, D., and Ashkenazi, A. Death receptor recruitment of endogenous caspase-10 and apoptosis initiation in the absence of caspase-8. *J. Biol. Chem.* 276, 46639-46646 (2001).
66. LeBlanc, H., Lawrence, D.A., Varfolomeev, E., Totpal, K., Morlan, J., Schow, P., Fong, S., Schwall, R., Sinicropi, D., and Ashkenazi, A. Tumor cell resistance to death receptor induced apoptosis through mutational inactivation of the proapoptotic Bcl-2 homolog Bax. *Nature Med.* 8, 274-281 (2002).
67. Miller, K., Meng, G., Liu, J., Hurst, A., Hsei, V., Wong, W-L., Ekert, R., Lawrence, D., Sherwood, S., DeForge, L., Gaudreault, Keller, G., Sliwkowski, M., Ashkenazi, A., and Presta, L. Design, Construction, and analyses of multivalent antibodies. *J. Immunol.* 170, 4854-4861 (2003).

68. Varfolomeev, E., Kischkel, F., Martin, F., Wanh, H., Lawrence, D., Olsson, C., Tom, L., Erickson, S., French, D., Schow, P., Grewal, I. and Ashkenazi, A. Immune system development in APRIL knockout mice. Submitted.

**Review articles:**

1. Ashkenazi, A., Peralta, E., Winslow, J., Ramachandran, J., and Capon, D., J. Functional role of muscarinic acetylcholine receptor subtype diversity. *Cold Spring Harbor Symposium on Quantitative Biology*. **LIII**, 263-272 (1988).
2. Ashkenazi, A., Peralta, E., Winslow, J., Ramachandran, J., and Capon, D. Functional diversity of muscarinic receptor subtypes in cellular signal transduction and growth. *Trends Pharmacol. Sci.* Dec Supplement, 12-21 (1989).
3. Chamow, S., Duliege, A., Ammann, A., Kahn, J., Allen, D., Eichberg, J., Byrn, R., Capon, D., Ward, R., and Ashkenazi, A. CD4 immunoadhesins in anti-HIV therapy: new developments. *Int. J. Cancer Supplement* 7, 69-72 (1992).
4. Ashkenazi, A., Capon, and D. Ward, R. Immunoadhesins. *Int. Rev. Immunol.* **10**, 217-225 (1993).
5. Ashkenazi, A., and Peralta, E. Muscarinic Receptors. In *Handbook of Receptors and Channels*. (S. Peroutka, ed.), CRC Press, Boca Raton, Vol. I, p. 1-27, (1994).
6. Krantz, S. B., Means, R. T., Jr., Lina, J., Marsters, S. A., and Ashkenazi, A. Inhibition of erythroid colony formation in vitro by gamma interferon. In *Molecular Biology of Hematopoiesis* (N. Abraham, R. Shadduck, A. Levine F. Takaku, eds.) Intercept Ltd. Paris, Vol. 3, p. 135-147 (1994).
7. Ashkenazi, A. Cytokine neutralization as a potential therapeutic approach for SIRS and shock. *J. Biotechnology in Healthcare* **1**, 197-206 (1994).
8. Ashkenazi, A., and Chamow, S. M. Immunoadhesins: an alternative to human monoclonal antibodies. *Immunomethods: A companion to Methods in Enzymology* **8**, 104-115 (1995).
9. Chamow, S., and Ashkenazi, A. Immunoadhesins: Principles and Applications. *Trends Biotech.* **14**, 52-60 (1996).
10. Ashkenazi, A., and Chamow, S. M. Immunoadhesins as research tools and therapeutic agents. *Curr. Opin. Immunol.* **9**, 195-200 (1997).
11. Ashkenazi, A., and Dixit, V. Death receptors: signaling and modulation. *Science* **281**, 1305-1308 (1998).
12. Ashkenazi, A., and Dixit, V. Apoptosis control by death and decoy receptors. *Curr. Opin. Cell. Biol.* **11**, 255-260 (1999).

13. Ashkenazi, A. Chapters on Apo2L/TRAIL; DR4, DR5, DcR1, DcR2; and DcR3. Online Cytokine Handbook ([www.apnet.com/cytokinereference/](http://www.apnet.com/cytokinereference/)).
14. Ashkenazi, A. Targeting death and decoy receptors of the tumor necrosis factor superfamily. *Nature Rev. Cancer* 2, 420-430 (2002).
15. LeBlanc, H. and Ashkenazi, A. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. *Cell Death and Differentiation* 10, 66-75 (2003).
16. Almasan, A. and Ashkenazi, A. Apo2L/TRAIL: apoptosis signaling, biology, and potential for cancer therapy. *Cytokine and Growth Factor Reviews* 14, 337-348 (2003).

**Book:**

Antibody Fusion Proteins (Chamow, S., and Ashkenazi, A., eds., John Wiley and Sons Inc.) (1999).

**Talks:**

1. Resistance of primary HIV isolates to CD4 is independent of CD4-gp120 binding affinity. UCSD Symposium, HIV Disease: Pathogenesis and Therapy. Greenelefe, FL, March 1991.
2. Use of immuno-hybrids to extend the half-life of receptors. IBC conference on Biopharmaceutical Half-life Extension. New Orleans, LA, June 1992.
3. Results with TNF receptor Immunoadhesins for the Treatment of Sepsis. IBC conference on Endotoxemia and Sepsis. Philadelphia, PA, June-1992.
4. Immunoadhesins: an alternative to human antibodies. IBC conference on Antibody Engineering. San Diego, CA, December 1993.
5. Tumor necrosis factor receptor: a potential therapeutic for human septic shock. American Society for Microbiology Meeting, Atlanta, GA, May 1993.
6. Protective efficacy of TNF receptor immunoadhesin vs anti-TNF monoclonal antibody in a rat model for endotoxic shock. 5th International Congress on TNF. Asilomar, CA, May 1994.
7. Interferon- $\gamma$  signals via a multisubunit receptor complex that contains two types of polypeptide chain. American Association of Immunologists Conference. San Francisco, CA, July 1995.
8. Immunoadhesins: Principles and Applications. Gordon Research Conference on Drug Delivery in Biology and Medicine. Ventura, CA, February 1996.

9. Apo-2 Ligand, a new member of the TNF family that induces apoptosis in tumor cells. Cambridge Symposium on TNF and Related Cytokines in Treatment of Cancer. Hilton-Head, NC, March 1996.
10. Induction of apoptosis by Apo2 Ligand. American Society for Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Symposium on Growth Factors and Cytokine Receptors. New Orleans, LA, June, 1996.
11. Apo2 ligand, an extracellular trigger of apoptosis. 2nd Clontech Symposium, Palo Alto, CA, October 1996.
12. Regulation of apoptosis by members of the TNF ligand and receptor families. Stanford University School of Medicine, Palo Alto, CA, December 1996.
13. Apo-3: a novel receptor that regulates cell death and inflammation. 4th International Congress on Immune Consequences of Trauma, Shock, and Sepsis. Munich, Germany, March 1997.
14. New members of the TNF ligand and receptor families that regulate apoptosis, inflammation, and immunity. UCLA School of Medicine, LA, CA, March 1997.
15. Immunoadhesins: an alternative to monoclonal antibodies. 5th World Conference on Bispecific Antibodies. Volendam, Holland, June 1997.
16. Control of Apo2L signaling. Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Symposium on Programmed Cell Death. Cold Spring Harbor, New York. September, 1997.
17. Chairman and speaker, Apoptosis Signaling session. IBC's 4th Annual Conference on Apoptosis. San Diego, CA., October 1997.
18. Control of Apo2L signaling by death and decoy receptors. American Association for the Advancement of Science. Philadelphia, PA, February 1998.
19. Apo2 ligand and its receptors. American Society of Immunologists. San Francisco, CA, April 1998.
20. Death receptors and ligands. 7th International TNF Congress. Cape Cod, MA, May 1998.
21. Apo2L as a potential therapeutic for cancer. UCLA School of Medicine. LA, CA, June 1998.
22. Apo2L as a potential therapeutic for cancer. Gordon Research Conference on Cancer Chemotherapy. New London, NH, July 1998.
23. Control of apoptosis by Apo2L. Endocrine Society Conference, Stevenson, WA, August 1998.
24. Control of apoptosis by Apo2L. International Cytokine Society Conference, Jerusalem, Israel, October 1998.



25. Apoptosis control by death and decoy receptors. American Association for Cancer Research Conference, Whistler, BC, Canada, March 1999.
26. Apoptosis control by death and decoy receptors. American Society for Biochemistry and Molecular Biology Conference, San Francisco, CA, May 1999.
27. Apoptosis control by death and decoy receptors. Gordon Research Conference on Apoptosis, New London, NH, June 1999.
28. Apoptosis control by death and decoy receptors. Arthritis Foundation Research Conference, Alexandria GA, Aug 1999.
29. Safety and anti-tumor activity of recombinant soluble Apo2L/TRAIL. Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Symposium on Programmed Cell Death. . Cold Spring Harbor, NY, September 1999.
30. The Apo2L/TRAIL system: therapeutic potential. American Association for Cancer Research, Lake Tahoe, NV, Feb 2000.
31. Apoptosis and cancer therapy. Stanford University School of Medicine, Stanford, CA, Mar 2000.
32. Apoptosis and cancer therapy. University of Pennsylvania School of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA, Apr 2000.
33. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. International Congress on TNF. Trondheim, Norway, May 2000.
34. The Apo2L/TRAIL system: therapeutic potential. Cap-CURE summit meeting. Santa Monica, CA, June 2000.
35. The Apo2L/TRAIL system: therapeutic potential. MD Anderson Cancer Center. Houston, TX, June 2000.
36. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. The Protein Society, 14<sup>th</sup> Symposium. San Diego, CA, August 2000.
37. Anti-tumor activity of Apo2L/TRAIL. AAPS annual meeting. Indianapolis, IN Aug 2000.
38. Apoptosis signaling and anti-cancer potential of Apo2L/TRAIL. Cancer Research Institute, UC San Francisco, CA, September 2000.
39. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. Kenote address, TNF family Minisymposium, NIH. Bethesda, MD, September 2000.
40. Death receptors: signaling and modulation. Keystone symposium on the Molecular basis of cancer. Taos, NM, Jan 2001.
41. Preclinical studies of Apo2L/TRAIL in cancer. Symposium on Targeted therapies in the treatment of lung cancer. Aspen, CO, Jan 2001.

42. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. Weizmann Institute of Science, Rehovot, Israel, March 2001.
43. Apo2L/TRAIL: Apoptosis signaling and potential for cancer therapy. Weizmann Institute of Science, Rehovot, Israel, March 2001.
44. Targeting death receptors in cancer with Apo2L/TRAIL. Cell Death and Disease conference, North Falmouth, MA, Jun 2001.
45. Targeting death receptors in cancer with Apo2L/TRAIL. Biotechnology Organization conference, San Diego, CA, Jun 2001.
46. Apo2L/TRAIL signaling and apoptosis resistance mechanisms. Gordon Research Conference on Apoptosis, Oxford, UK, July 2001.
47. Apo2L/TRAIL signaling and apoptosis resistance mechanisms. Cleveland Clinic Foundation, Cleveland, OH, Oct 2001.
48. Apoptosis signaling by death receptors: overview. International Society for Interferon and Cytokine Research conference, Cleveland, OH, Oct 2001.
49. Apoptosis signaling by death receptors. American Society of Nephrology Conference. San Francisco, CA, Oct 2001.
50. Targeting death receptors in cancer. Apoptosis: commercial opportunities. San Diego, CA, Apr 2002.
51. Apo2L/TRAIL signaling and apoptosis resistance mechanisms. Kimmel Cancer Research Center, Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore MD. May 2002.
52. Apoptosis control by Apo2L/TRAIL. (Keynote Address) University of Alabama Cancer Center Retreat, Birmingham, Ab. October 2002.
53. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. (Session co-chair) TNF international conference. San Diego, CA, October 2002.
54. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. Swiss Institute for Cancer Research (ISREC). Lausanne, Switzerland. Jan 2003.
55. Apoptosis induction with Apo2L/TRAIL. Conference on New Targets and Innovative Strategies in Cancer Treatment. Monte Carlo. February 2003.
56. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. Hermelin Brain Tumor Center Symposium on Apoptosis. Detroit, MI. April 2003.
57. Targeting apoptosis through death receptors. Sixth Annual Conference on Targeted Therapies in the Treatment of Breast Cancer. Kona, Hawaii. July 2003.
58. Targeting apoptosis through death receptors. Second International Conference on Targeted Cancer Therapy. Washington, DC. Aug 2003.

**Issued Patents:**

1. Ashkenazi, A., Chamow, S. and Kogan, T. Carbohydrate-directed crosslinking reagents. US patent 5,329,028 (Jul 12, 1994).
2. Ashkenazi, A., Chamow, S. and Kogan, T. Carbohydrate-directed crosslinking reagents. US patent 5,605,791 (Feb 25, 1997).
3. Ashkenazi, A., Chamow, S. and Kogan, T. Carbohydrate-directed crosslinking reagents. US patent 5,889,155 (Jul 27, 1999).
4. Ashkenazi, A., APO-2 Ligand. US patent 6,030,945 (Feb 29, 2000).
5. Ashkenazi, A., Chuntharapai, A., Kim, J., APO-2 ligand antibodies. US patent 6,046,048 (Apr 4, 2000).
6. Ashkenazi, A., Chamow, S. and Kogan, T. Carbohydrate-directed crosslinking reagents. US patent 6,124,435 (Sep 26, 2000).
7. Ashkenazi, A., Chuntharapai, A., Kim, J., Method for making monoclonal and cross-reactive antibodies. US patent 6,252,050 (Jun 26, 2001).
8. Ashkenazi, A. APO-2 Receptor. US patent 6,342,369 (Jan 29, 2002).
9. Ashkenazi, A. Fong, S., Goddard, A., Gurney, A., Napier, M., Tumas, D., Wood, W. A-33 polypeptides. US patent 6,410,708 (Jun 25, 2002).
10. Ashkenazi, A. APO-3 Receptor. US patent 6,462,176 B1 (Oct 8, 2002).
11. Ashkenazi, A. APO-2LI and APO-3 polypeptide antibodies. US patent 6,469,144 B1 (Oct 22, 2002).
12. Ashkenazi, A., Chamow, S. and Kogan, T. Carbohydrate-directed crosslinking reagents. US patent 6,582,928B1 (Jun 24, 2003).



# TECHNICAL UPDATE

FROM YOUR LABORATORY SERVICES PROVIDER

## HER-2/neu Breast Cancer Predictive Testing

Julie Sanford Hanna, Ph.D. and Dan Mornth, M.D.

EACH YEAR, OVER 182,000 WOMEN in the United States are diagnosed with breast cancer, and approximately 45,000 die of the disease.<sup>1</sup> Incidence appears to be increasing in the United States at a rate of roughly 2% per year. The reasons for the increase are unclear, but non-genetic risk factors appear to play a large role.<sup>2</sup>

Five-year survival rates range from approximately 65%-85%, depending on demographic group, with a significant percentage of women experiencing recurrence of their cancer within 10 years of diagnosis. One of the factors most predictive for recurrence once a diagnosis of breast cancer has been made is the number of axillary lymph nodes to which tumor has metastasized. Most node-positive women are given adjuvant therapy, which increases their survival. However, 20%-30% of patients without axillary node involvement also develop recurrent disease, and the difficulty lies in how to identify this high-risk subset of patients. These patients could benefit from increased surveillance, early intervention, and treatment.

Prognostic markers currently used in breast cancer recurrence prediction include tumor size, histological grade, steroid hormone receptor status, DNA ploidy, proliferative index, and cathepsin D status. Expression of growth factor receptors and over-expression of the HER-2/neu oncogene have also been identified as having value regarding treatment regimen and prognosis.

HER-2/neu (also known as *c-erbB2*) is an oncogene that encodes a transmembrane glycoprotein that is homologous to, but distinct from, the epidermal growth factor receptor. Numerous studies have indicated that high levels of expression of this protein are associated with rapid tumor growth, certain forms of therapy resistance, and shorter disease-free survival. The gene has been shown to be amplified and/or overexpressed in 10%-30% of invasive breast cancers and in 40%-60% of intraductal breast carcinoma.<sup>3</sup>

There are two distinct FDA-approved methods by which HER-2/neu status can be evaluated: immunohistochemistry (IHC, HercepTest™) and FISH (fluorescent in situ hybridization, PathVysion™ Kit). Both methods can be performed on archived and current specimens. The first method allows visual assessment of the amount of HER-2/neu protein present on the cell membrane. The latter method allows direct quantification of the level of gene amplification present in the tumor, enabling differentiation between low- versus high-amplification. At least one study has demonstrated a difference in

recurrence risk in women younger than 40 years of age for low- versus high-amplified tumors (54.5% compared to 85.7%); this is compared to a recurrence rate of 16.7% for patients with no HER-2/neu gene amplification.<sup>4</sup> HER-2/neu status may be particularly important to establish in women with small ( $\leq 1$  cm) tumor size.

The choice of methodology for determination of HER-2/neu status depends in part on the clinical setting. FDA approval for the Vysis FISH test was granted based on clinical trials involving 1549 node-positive patients. Patients received one of three different treatments consisting of different doses of cyclophosphamide, Adriamycin, and 5-fluorouracil (CAF). The study showed that patients with amplified HER-2/neu benefited from treatment with higher doses of adriamycin-based therapy, while those with normal HER-2/neu levels did not. The study therefore identified a sub-set of women, who because they did not benefit from more aggressive treatment, did not need to be exposed to the associated side effects. In addition, other evidence indicates that HER-2/neu amplification in node-negative patients can be used as an independent prognostic indicator for early recurrence, recurrent disease at any time and disease-related death.<sup>5</sup> Demonstration of HER-2/neu gene amplification by FISH has also been shown to be of value in predicting response to chemotherapy in stage-2 breast cancer patients.

Selection of patients for Herceptin® (Trastuzumab) monoclonal antibody therapy, however, is based upon demonstration of HER-2/neu protein overexpression using HercepTest™. Studies using Herceptin® in patients with metastatic breast cancer show an increase in time to disease progression, increased response rate to chemotherapeutic agents and a small increase in overall survival rate. The FISH assays have not yet been approved for this purpose, and studies looking at response to Herceptin® in patients with or without gene amplification status determined by FISH are in progress.

In general, FISH and IHC results correlate well. However, subsets of tumors are found which show discordant results; i.e., protein overexpression without gene amplification or lack of protein overexpression with gene amplification. The clinical significance of such results is unclear. Based on the above considerations, HER-2/neu testing at SHMC/PAML will utilize immunohistochemistry (HercepTest®) as a screen, followed by FISH in IHC-negative cases. Alternatively, either method may be ordered individually depending on the clinical setting or clinician preference.

## CPT code information

### HER-2/neu via IHC

88342 (including interpretive report)

### HER-2/neu via FISH

88271x2 Molecular cytogenetics, DNA probe, each

88274 Molecular cytogenetics, interphase in situ hybridization, analyze 25-99 cells

88291. Cytogenetics and molecular cytogenetics, interpretation and report

## Procedural Information

Immunohistochemistry is performed using the FDA-approved DAKO antibody kit, Herceptest<sup>®</sup>. The DAKO kit contains reagents required to complete a two-step immunohistochemical staining procedure for routinely processed, paraffin-embedded specimens. Following incubation with the primary rabbit antibody to human HER-2/neu protein, the kit employs a ready-to-use dextran-based visualization reagent. This reagent consists of both secondary goat anti-rabbit antibody molecules with horseradish peroxidase molecules linked to a common dextran polymer backbone, thus eliminating the need for sequential application of link antibody and peroxidase conjugated antibody. Enzymatic conversion of the subsequently added chromogen results in formation of visible reaction product at the antigen site. The specimen is then counterstained; a pathologist using light-microscopy interprets results.

FISH analysis at SHMC/PAML is performed using the FDA-approved PathVysion<sup>™</sup> HER-2/neu DNA probe kit, produced by Vysis, Inc. Formalin fixed, paraffin-embedded breast tissue is processed using routine histological methods, and then slides are treated to allow hybridization of DNA probes to the nuclei present in the tissue section. The PathVysion<sup>™</sup> kit contains two direct-labeled DNA probes, one specific for the alphoid repetitive DNA (CEP 17, spectrum orange) present at the chromosome 17 centromere and the second for the HER-2/neu oncogene located at 17q11.2-12 (spectrum green). Enumeration of the probes allows a ratio of the number of copies of chromosome 17 to the number of copies of HER-2/neu to be obtained; this enables quantification of low versus high amplification levels, and allows an estimate of the percentage of cells with HER-2/neu gene amplification. The clinically relevant distinction is whether the gene amplification is due to increased gene copy number on the two chromosome 17 homologues normally present or an increase in the number of chromosome 17s in the cells. In the majority of cases, ratio equivalents less than 2.0 are indicative of a normal/negative result, ratios of 2.1 and over indicate that amplification is present and to what degree. Interpretation of this data will be performed and reported from the Vysis-certified Cytogenetics laboratory at SHMC.

## References

1. Wingo, P.A., Tong, T., Bolden, S., "Cancer Statistics", 1995;45:1:8-31.
2. "Cancer Rates and Risks", 4<sup>th</sup> ed., National Institutes of Health, National Cancer Institute, 1996, p. 120.
3. Slamon, D.J., Clark, G.M., Song, S.G., Levin, W.J., Ulrich, A., McGuire, W.L., "Human breast Cancer: Correlation of relapse and survival with amplification of the her-2/neu oncogene". Science, 235:177-182, 1987.
4. Xing, W.R., Gilchrist, K.W., Harris, C.P., Samson, W., Meisner, L.F., "FISH detection of HER-2/neu oncogene amplification in early onset breast cancer". Breast Cancer Res. And Treatment 39(2):203-212, 1996.
5. Press, M.F., Bernstein, L., Thomas, P.A., Meisner, L.F., Zhou, J.Y., Ma, Y., Hung, G., Robinson, R.A., Harris, C., El-Naggar, A., Slamon, D.J., Phillips, R.N., Ross, J.S., Wolman, S.R., Flom, K.J., "Her-2/neu gene amplification characterized by fluorescence in situ hybridization: poor prognosis in node-negative breast carcinomas", J. Clinical Oncology 15(8):2894-2904, 1997.

*Provided for the clients of*

**PATHOLOGY ASSOCIATES MEDICAL LABORATORIES  
PACLAB NETWORK LABORATORIES  
TRI-CITIES LABORATORY  
TREASURE VALLEY LABORATORY**

*For more information, please contact  
your local representative.*

**This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning  
Operations and is not part of the Official Record**

**BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- BLACK BORDERS
- IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- FADED TEXT OR DRAWING
- BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING
- SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS
- GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS
- LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT
- REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY
- OTHER: \_\_\_\_\_

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.**